

# **The Journal**

## **USER MANUAL**

**© 1996-2018 by David Michael  
David Michael**

<b>1. Welcome to The Journal</b>	<b>8</b>
<b>2. The Journal Information</b>	<b>10</b>
2.1 Contact Information .....	11
2.2 THE JOURNAL - PRODUCT LICENSE INFORMATION .....	12
2.3 Credits .....	13
2.4 Dedication .....	14
2.5 Special Thanks .....	14
2.6 Buy The Journal .....	16
2.7 The Journal Pricing .....	17
2.8 The Journal Order Form .....	18
2.9 Version History .....	18
2.10 What's New in The Journal 8 .....	30
<b>3. How to Use The Journal</b>	<b>33</b>
3.1 Getting Started .....	34
3.1.1 Creating Your First Journal Volume .....	35
3.1.2 Creating Your Login Name .....	36
3.1.3 Confirm Your Journal Volume and Login Name .....	37
3.1.4 Installing Add-on Packages .....	38
3.2 Making Entries in The Journal .....	39
3.2.1 Printing Entries .....	40
3.2.2 Inserting Images and Media in Entries .....	42
3.2.3 Other Entry-Related Topics .....	43
3.3 Using Categories .....	44
3.3.1 Creating a New Category .....	44
3.3.2 Editing Categories .....	45
3.4 Creating Additional Logins .....	46
3.5 Creating Additional Journal Volumes .....	47
3.6 Database Maintenance .....	48
<b>4. Frequently Asked Questions (FAQ)</b>	<b>49</b>
4.1 FAQ: Entries .....	51
4.2 FAQ: Printing .....	54
4.3 FAQ: Categories .....	55
4.4 FAQ: User Interface .....	57
4.5 FAQ: Journal Volumes .....	58

<b>4.6</b>	<b>FAQ: Export/Import .....</b>	<b>59</b>
<b>4.7</b>	<b>FAQ: Database Maintenance .....</b>	<b>60</b>
<b>4.8</b>	<b>FAQ: Security .....</b>	<b>62</b>
<b>4.9</b>	<b>FAQ: Upgrading .....</b>	<b>63</b>
4.9.1	Upgrading from The Journal 7, 6, 5, 4 or 3 .....	64
4.9.2	Upgrading Add-on Packages .....	66
4.9.3	Upgrading from The Journal 2.x .....	67
<b>5.</b>	<b>The Journal Reference .....</b>	<b>68</b>
<b>5.1</b>	<b>Glossary .....</b>	<b>69</b>
<b>5.2</b>	<b>Blog Support .....</b>	<b>72</b>
5.2.1	Using a Blog .....	73
5.2.2	Blog Profile .....	74
5.2.3	Setting Up a WordPress Blog .....	75
5.2.4	Setting Up a Blogger (Google) Blog .....	76
5.2.5	Setting Up a Custom Blog .....	76
<b>5.3</b>	<b>Categories .....</b>	<b>77</b>
5.3.1	Calendar Categories .....	77
5.3.1.1	Calendar Views .....	78
5.3.2	Loose-leaf Categories .....	79
5.3.3	Shared Categories .....	79
5.3.4	Merging Categories .....	80
5.3.5	Add-on Packages .....	80
5.3.6	Category Properties .....	81
5.3.6.1	Category Properties: General .....	82
5.3.6.2	Category Properties: Calendar .....	83
5.3.6.3	Category Properties: Entry .....	85
5.3.6.4	Category Properties: Entry Text Style .....	87
5.3.6.5	Category Properties: Security .....	88
5.3.6.6	Category Properties: Sharing .....	88
<b>5.4</b>	<b>Database Maintenance .....</b>	<b>89</b>
5.4.1	Backup/Restore .....	89
5.4.2	Backup Settings .....	90
5.4.3	Restore .....	90
5.4.4	Repair The Journal Databases .....	90
5.4.5	Clean Journal Volume folder .....	91
<b>5.5</b>	<b>Entries .....</b>	<b>91</b>
5.5.1	Document Entries .....	91
5.5.2	External Object Entries .....	92
5.5.3	Image Entries .....	92
5.5.4	Create New Calendar Entries .....	92

5.5.5	Saving Entries .....	93
5.5.6	Search Entries .....	94
5.5.6.1	Match Query Syntax .....	95
5.5.7	Search Results .....	97
5.5.8	Entry Report Wizard .....	98
5.5.9	Entry Report Results .....	99
5.5.10	Delete Entries .....	100
5.5.11	View Deleted Entries .....	100
5.5.12	Lock/Unlock Entries .....	100
<b>5.6</b>	<b>Export/Import &amp; Syncing .....</b>	<b>101</b>
5.6.1	Export Entries as Document .....	101
5.6.2	Export Entries as File .....	103
5.6.3	Importing Entries .....	104
5.6.4	Import Entries .....	105
5.6.5	Importing Entries from Other Journal Software .....	106
5.6.6	Batch Entry Import .....	107
5.6.7	Synchronizing The Journal .....	108
<b>5.7</b>	<b>Images &amp; Media .....</b>	<b>110</b>
5.7.1	Using Images in Entries .....	111
5.7.2	Doodling in Entries .....	111
5.7.3	Entry Background Images .....	112
5.7.4	Creating Your Own Borders .....	113
5.7.5	Creating Your Own Backgrounds .....	114
5.7.6	Calendar Charms .....	115
5.7.7	Creating Your Own Calendar Charms .....	116
5.7.8	Inserting Media Files into Entries .....	117
5.7.9	Inserting Objects into Entries .....	117
<b>5.8</b>	<b>Journal Volumes .....</b>	<b>118</b>
5.8.1	Journal Volume Properties .....	118
5.8.2	Delete Users .....	118
<b>5.9</b>	<b>Links .....</b>	<b>119</b>
5.9.1	Entry Links .....	119
5.9.1.1	Typing Out Entry Links .....	120
5.9.2	External Entry Links .....	122
5.9.3	Bookmarks .....	122
5.9.4	File Links .....	123
5.9.5	Internet Links .....	123
5.9.6	Insert/Edit Link .....	123
5.9.7	Typing out Links with Tags .....	124
<b>5.10</b>	<b>Printing .....</b>	<b>124</b>

5.10.1	Printing Headers and Footers .....	125
5.10.2	Print Macros .....	126
<b>5.11</b>	<b>Reminders, Tasks &amp; To-Do .....</b>	<b>127</b>
5.11.1	Appointments .....	127
5.11.2	Events .....	128
5.11.3	Tasks .....	129
5.11.4	Special Days .....	129
5.11.5	Advanced Reminder Options .....	130
5.11.6	Day Planner .....	132
5.11.7	View All Reminders .....	133
5.11.8	Daily/Weekly Reminder Report .....	133
5.11.9	Exporting Reminders .....	133
5.11.10	Importing Reminders .....	134
5.11.11	Export/Import CSV Format .....	134
5.11.12	Missed Reminders .....	135
5.11.13	To-Do Items (Checkboxes) .....	135
<b>5.12</b>	<b>Security .....</b>	<b>136</b>
5.12.1	Levels of Security .....	136
5.12.2	Choosing a Good Password .....	137
5.12.3	Security Details .....	137
5.12.4	Extended Security .....	138
5.12.5	Extended Security: Global Options .....	138
<b>5.13</b>	<b>Styles .....</b>	<b>139</b>
5.13.1	Adding New Styles .....	140
5.13.2	Editing Styles .....	140
5.13.3	Style Options .....	141
<b>5.14</b>	<b>Tables .....</b>	<b>142</b>
5.14.1	Using Tables .....	143
5.14.2	Insert Table .....	144
5.14.3	Table Properties .....	145
5.14.4	Table Row Properties .....	146
5.14.5	Table Cell Properties .....	147
<b>5.15</b>	<b>Templates .....</b>	<b>147</b>
5.15.1	Simple Templates .....	148
5.15.2	Enhanced Templates .....	148
5.15.3	Enhanced Template Tags .....	149
5.15.4	Enhanced Template Script Variables .....	153
5.15.5	Creating Simple Templates .....	153
5.15.6	Creating Enhanced Templates .....	154
5.15.6.1	Enhanced Template Basics .....	154

5.15.6.2	Enhanced Template Sections .....	156
5.15.6.3	Enhanced Template Scripting .....	157
5.15.6.4	Enhanced Template Scripting Part 2 .....	160
5.15.6.5	Enhanced Templates Wrapup .....	161
<b>5.16</b>	<b>Topics .....</b>	<b>161</b>
5.16.1	Using Topics .....	162
5.16.2	Apply Topic .....	164
5.16.3	Editing Topics .....	164
5.16.4	Merging Topics .....	164
5.16.5	Searching Topics .....	165
<b>5.17</b>	<b>User Interface .....</b>	<b>165</b>
5.17.1	Customizing the User Interface with Themes .....	165
5.17.2	Customizing the User Interface Font .....	165
5.17.3	Customizing the Menus & Toolbars .....	166
5.17.4	Keyboard Shortcuts (Hot-Keys) .....	166
5.17.5	Keyboard Shortcuts (Hot-Keys) Alphabetically .....	168
5.17.6	Language .....	171
5.17.7	Journal.INI .....	171
5.17.8	Command Line Options .....	172
5.17.9	Miscellaneous Forms .....	173
5.17.9.1	Calendar Charms .....	173
5.17.9.2	Category Statistics .....	173
5.17.9.3	Change User Password .....	173
5.17.9.4	Choose an Action .....	174
5.17.9.5	Choose Category to Import Into .....	174
5.17.9.6	Clipboard Viewer .....	175
5.17.9.7	Countdown Timer .....	175
5.17.9.8	Delete Users .....	176
5.17.9.9	Edit Auto Replace Strings .....	176
5.17.9.10	Edit Header/Footer .....	176
5.17.9.11	Edit Symbol Replace Strings .....	177
5.17.9.12	Enter Registration Keys .....	177
5.17.9.13	Entry Statistics .....	178
5.17.9.14	Find Text... .....	179
5.17.9.15	Get Web Page .....	179
5.17.9.16	Go to Date .....	179
5.17.9.17	Handle Dropped File .....	179
5.17.9.18	History... .....	180
5.17.9.19	Login .....	180
5.17.9.20	Paragraph Borders & Shading .....	180
5.17.9.21	Replace Text... .....	181
5.17.9.22	Reset Login Password .....	182
5.17.9.23	Select Entry .....	182
5.17.9.24	Stopwatch Timer .....	182
5.17.9.25	Unlock Form .....	183

5.17.9.26	User Images .....	183
5.17.9.27	User Statistics .....	184
5.17.9.28	Word Count .....	184
<b>5.18</b>	<b>User Preferences .....</b>	<b>184</b>
5.18.1	User Preferences: General .....	185
5.18.2	User Preferences: Global .....	186
5.18.3	User Preferences: Category .....	188
5.18.4	User Preferences: Entry .....	189
5.18.5	User Preferences: Editor .....	190
5.18.6	User Preferences: Topics .....	193
5.18.7	User Preferences: Reminders .....	194
5.18.8	User Preferences: Date/Time .....	195
5.18.9	User Preferences: Links .....	196
5.18.10	User Preferences: Spell Checker .....	196
5.18.11	User Preferences: Printing .....	197
5.18.12	User Preferences: Backup/Restore .....	197
5.18.13	User Preferences: Security .....	198
<b>Index</b>		<b>200</b>

**Welcome to The Journal**



## 1 Welcome to The Journal

- **Keeping a daily journal has never been easier!** The Journal always knows what day it is, and automatically organizes your entries by day, month and year.
- **Get organized!** With The Journal's many options for [categories](#) and [entries](#) you can be as organized as you want to be. Keep your personal journal separate from your work notes, or your dreams separate from your correspondence--but only if you want to.
- **Do it Your Way!** The Journal has no "agenda"--except to be as useful as possible. Use any journaling technique or writing style you want, even none at all. It's completely up to you.
- **The Journal Newsletter!** Sent out monthly (ish), [The Journal Newsletter](#) provides tips for using The Journal, articles about journaling and writing, writing exercises, news of updates and fixes, and more.

## Getting Started - New Users

[Getting Started with The Journal - A Step by Step Guide](#)

[Frequently Asked Questions \(FAQ\)](#)

## Getting Started - Upgrading

[See what's new in The Journal 8!](#)

- Find what you're looking for with lightning speed!
- Take full control of your journaling and writing!
- Synchronize multiple copies of The Journal!
- [And much, much more!](#)

[Upgrading from The Journal 7 or Earlier](#)

[Upgrading Add-on Packages](#)

[Upgrading from The Journal 2.x](#)

# The Journal Information

## 2 The Journal Information

[Getting Started with The Journal - A Step by Step Guide](#)

[Frequently Asked Questions \(FAQ\)](#)

[Contact Information](#) (email, Web page, etc.)

[THE JOURNAL - PRODUCT LICENSE INFORMATION](#)

[Credits](#)

[Dedication](#)

[Special Thanks](#)

[Buy The Journal](#)

[The Journal Pricing](#)

[The Journal Order Form](#)

[Version History](#)

[See what's new in The Journal 8!](#)

### 2.1 Contact Information

**The Journal Home Page**

<http://www.davidrm.com/thejournal/>

**The Journal Customer Support, Bug Reports & Suggestions**

[support@davidrm.com](mailto:support@davidrm.com)

**The Journal Newsletter**

<http://www.davidrm.com/thejournal/newsletter/>

**The Journal User Discussion**

Ask questions, swap journaling techniques, and learn tips and tricks for using DavidRM Software's The Journal.

Subscribing is free! Sign up here:

<http://www.davidrm.com/thejournal/tjsupport.php>

**DavidRM Software**

<http://www.davidrm.com>

**Mailing Address:**

DavidRM Software  
7018 East 78th Place  
Tulsa, OK 74133  
United States of America

## 2.2 THE JOURNAL - PRODUCT LICENSE INFORMATION

NOTICE TO USERS: CAREFULLY READ THE FOLLOWING LEGAL AGREEMENT.

USE OF THE SOFTWARE PROVIDED WITH THIS AGREEMENT (THE "SOFTWARE") CONSTITUTES YOUR ACCEPTANCE OF THESE TERMS. IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO THE TERMS OF THIS AGREEMENT, DO NOT INSTALL AND/OR USE THIS SOFTWARE.

### 1. LICENSE GRANT.

DavidRM Software grants you a license to use one copy of the version of this SOFTWARE on any one hardware product for as many licenses as you purchase. "You" means the company, entity or individual whose funds are used to pay the license fee. "Use" means storing, loading, installing, executing or displaying the SOFTWARE, whether on the hardware product directly or via a network.

HOUSEHOLD LICENSE: Individuals (not companies nor other entities) who purchase the SOFTWARE may use the SOFTWARE on any hardware products they own or are the primary user of, and on any hardware products owned by members of their immediate family residing in their household.

When you first obtain a copy of the SOFTWARE, you are granted an evaluation period of not more than 45 days or 45 uses, whichever is greater, after which time you must pay for the SOFTWARE according to the terms and prices discussed in the SOFTWARE's documentation, or you must remove the SOFTWARE from your computer.

You may not modify the SOFTWARE or disable any licensing or control features of the SOFTWARE except as an intended part of the SOFTWARE's programming features.

This license is not transferable to any other company, entity, or individual.

### 2. OWNERSHIP.

The SOFTWARE is owned and copyrighted by DavidRM Software. Your license confers no title or ownership in the SOFTWARE and should not be construed as a sale of any right in the SOFTWARE.

### 3. COPYRIGHT.

The SOFTWARE is protected by United States copyright law and international treaty provisions. You acknowledge that no title to the intellectual property in the SOFTWARE is transferred to you. You further acknowledge that title and full ownership rights to the SOFTWARE will remain the exclusive property of DavidRM Software and you will not acquire any rights to the SOFTWARE except as expressly set forth in this license. You agree that any copies of the SOFTWARE will contain the same proprietary notices which appear on and in the SOFTWARE.

### 4. UNAUTHORIZED USE.

You may not use, copy, rent, lease, sell, modify, decompile, disassemble, otherwise reverse engineer, or transfer the SOFTWARE except as provided in this agreement. Any such unauthorized use shall result in immediate and automatic termination of this license.

### 5. U.S. GOVERNMENT INFORMATION.

Use, duplication, or disclosure by the U.S. Government of the computer software and documentation in this package shall be subject to restrictions as set forth in subparagraph (c)(1)(ii) of the Rights in Technical Data and Computer Software clause at DFARS 252.277-7013 (Oct 1988) and FAR 52.227-19 (Jun 1987). The Contractor is DavidRM Software, 7018 East 78th Place, Tulsa, OK, 74133.

#### 6. LIMITED WARRANTY.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED ON AN "AS IS" BASIS. DAVIDRM SOFTWARE DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES RELATING TO THIS SOFTWARE, WHETHER EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO ANY IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. NEITHER DAVIDRM SOFTWARE NOR ANYONE ELSE WHO HAS BEEN INVOLVED IN THE CREATION, PRODUCTION, OR DELIVERY OF THIS SOFTWARE SHALL BE LIABLE FOR ANY INDIRECT, CONSEQUENTIAL, OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE SUCH SOFTWARE, EVEN IF DAVIDRM SOFTWARE HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES OR CLAIMS. THE PERSON USING THE SOFTWARE BEARS ALL RISK AS TO THE QUALITY AND PERFORMANCE OF THE SOFTWARE.

SOME JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW LIMITATION OR EXCLUSION OF INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, SO THE ABOVE LIMITATIONS OR EXCLUSION MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU TO THE EXTENT THAT LIABILITY IS BY LAW INCAPABLE OF EXCLUSION OR RESTRICTION.

IN NO EVENT SHALL ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY EXCEED THE LICENSE FEE PAID TO DAVIDRM SOFTWARE.

#### 7. NO LIABILITY FOR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES.

IN NO EVENT SHALL DAVIDRM SOFTWARE OR ITS SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE TO YOU FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL OR INDIRECT DAMAGES OF ANY KIND ARISING OUT OF THE DELIVERY, PERFORMANCE OR USE OF THE SOFTWARE, EVEN IF DAVIDRM SOFTWARE HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. IN NO EVENT WILL DAVIDRM SOFTWARE'S LIABILITY FOR ANY CLAIM, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, TORT OR ANY OTHER THEORY OF LIABILITY, EXCEED THE LICENSE FEE PAID BY YOU, IF ANY.

#### 8. SEVERABILITY.

In the event of invalidity of any provision of this license, the parties agree that such invalidity shall not affect the validity of the remaining portions of this license.

#### 9. GOVERNING LAW.

This agreement shall be governed by the laws of the State of Oklahoma excluding the application of its conflicts of law rules and shall inure to the benefit of DavidRM Software and any successors, administrators, heirs and assigns. Any action or proceeding brought by either party against the other arising out of or related to this agreement shall be brought only in a STATE or FEDERAL COURT of competent jurisdiction located in Tulsa County, Oklahoma. The parties hereby consent to in personam jurisdiction of said courts. This agreement will not be governed by the United Nations Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, the application of which is expressly excluded.

#### 10. ENTIRE AGREEMENT.

This is the entire agreement between you and DavidRM Software which supersedes any prior agreement or understanding, whether written or oral, relating to the subject matter of this license.

#### 11. RESERVED RIGHTS.

All rights not expressly granted here are reserved to DavidRM Software.

## 2.3 Credits

The Journal was designed and developed by [David R. Michael](#).

The Journal splash screen and icon graphics were designed by Don Michael, Jr (<http://www.donmichaeljr.com>).

The Journal was developed using Embarcadero's Delphi (<https://www.embarcadero.com/products/delphi>).

The Journal's online help was created with Help & Manual from EC Software (<http://www.helpandmanual.com>).

The Journal uses the following third-party algorithms, libraries and components:

- TRichViewEdit component by Sergey Tkachenko (<http://www.trichview.com>).
- TScaleRichView component by Ilya I. Zelensky.
- DISQLite3 database components by Delphi Inspiration (<http://www.yunga.de/delphi/doku.php/>).
- Configurable menu and toolbars from Developer Express (<http://www.devexpress.com>).
- Toolbar, menu and many, many Calendar Charm icons by IconShock (<http://www.icons shock.com>).
- Spell checker and thesaurus from Addictive Software (<http://www.addictivesoftware.com>).
- AES encryption, SHA256 hashing, and ZLib compression libraries from Synopse (<http://synopse.info>).
- GraphicEx (image file handling) library by Mike Lischke (<http://www.soft-gems.net>).
- RBCalendar from Borshack Software Solutions.
- ShellBrowser from JAM Software (<http://www.jam-software.com>).
- ZipForge components by ComponentAce (<http://www.componentace.com>).
- Year/month/day planners by Shorter Path Software (<http://www.shorterpath.com>).
- Doodler component created using Image Editor by Greatis Software (<http://www.greatis.com>).

Backward compatibility credits:

- MD5 (password hashing) algorithm produced by RSA Data Security, Inc.
- Twofish block cipher (entry text encryption) designed by Bruce Schneier (<http://www.counterpane.com>).
- Twofish encryption component programmed by Dave Barton.
- MD5 hashing component programmed by Greg Carter.
- LZH5 compression algorithm (a Lempel-Ziv-Huffman algorithm) programmed by South Pacific Information Services Ltd.

The Journal 4's original Calendar Charm icons (    ...) were created by Dan MacDonald. Additional Calendar Charms were created by Jennifer Holstien and Mickael Pointier.

All trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

## 2.4 Dedication

*For Susan, Davis, Serene, & Quaid.*

## 2.5 Special Thanks

First, I must thank my wife, Susan, for being there, and for being here. I couldn't have finished The Journal 8 (or any previous version) without her.

**The Journal 8 testers:** Shiyas Alikunju, Cindy Arrowwood, Jody Cecil, H. Kim Christensen, Gary Cole, Mike Ellis, William G. Haines, Donavon Hiss, Wesley Jones, George McCusker, John S. Martin, Julie Smith, Milena Stoyanova, Jeff Toomb, Don Vally

**The Journal 8 translators:**

- Matthias Nagel (German)

### Special Thanks from The Journal 7

**The Journal 7 testers:** David Balzotti, Brad Barborak, Brad Barker, Lars Benson, Vicki Bourg, Kieran Brady, David G. Cooper, Paul E. Dawn, Jr., Mike Ellis, Beth Gardner, Scot Gerardi, James Gill, Craig Gordon, Fred Gray, Mark Hamilton, A C Harper, Guy G. Hawkins, Donavon Hiss, Ken Jones, Graham Keys, Ed Livingston, Michael 'Mac' McCormack, George McCusker, John S. Martin, David Milligan, Sandro Perotti, Stan Reinhardt, Doug Renz, Joost Rongen, John Rowney, Mark Sapp, Rich See, Julie Smith, Susie Stonehill, Marianne Strait, Jeff Toomb, James Walker

**The Journal 7 translators:**

- Matthias Nagel (German)

### Special Thanks from The Journal 6

**The Journal 6 testers:** Frances Aranda, Joan J. Artus, Brad Barker, Christina Becker, Ben Charron, David Cooper, Kathy Dunham, Kimberly Elahab, Mike Ellis, Laura Federico, Aaron Grawat, Patricia Harris, Rebecca Henry, Donavon C. Hiss, Nicole Holzem, Al Jacques, Sue James, Floyd Johnson, Helga Kocurek, Wayne Lampel, Jock McDonald, Matthias Nagel, Amir Noori, Sandro Perotti, James Salyers, Rich See, Daniel Shin, Julie Smith, Brendan Stallard, Wandio Tim, Jeff Toomb, Mark Tyrnauer, Martin Vernhout

**The Journal 6 translators:**

- Matthias Nagel (German)
- Daniel Calbimonte (Spanish)
- Hrant Ohanyan (Armenian)

### Special Thanks from The Journal 5

**The Journal 5 testers:** Christina Becker, Vicki Bourg, Chuck Carruthers, Sue Cifelli, Beth Collins, Jim Cook, Dawn Del Guercio, Emrah Diril, Robert Dunn-Miller, Mark Fassett, James Galiano, Aaron Grawat, Gary Ingraham, Wesley Jones, Joan Korte, Heather Kuhn, Jim McGowan, Dave McRobie, Steve Martinez, John Mihnos, Andrew Mitcham, Leslie Moore, Rich O'Brien, Val Peever, Terry Rickman, James Salyers, Rich See, Julie Smith, Russell Starner, Renger van Nieuwkoop, Ken Virapen, Bill Watkins, Arthur White, Tenzin Yonten

**The Journal 5 translators:**

- Baryshnikov Kirill (Russian)
- Matthias Nagel (German)

### Special Thanks from The Journal 4

My hat is off to Sergey Tkachenko, developer of the TRichView components. The Journal 4 owes a lot to what Sergey has made possible.

**The Journal 4 testers:** Brett Allen, Rob Barrett, Patricia Campbell, Trudi Champion, Jim Cook, Kathy Dunham, Laurie Engle, Laura Federico, Gary Filipinski, Len Flier, M. Hamilton, Patricia Harris, David Hollingworth, Peter Hollyer, Floyd Johnson, Lily Labrecque, Patrick S. Lewis, Michael Lowe, Raphael Love, Jerry McKee, Kevin McKenzie, Gerard Montigny, John Murphy, Noelle Neuwirth, Craig Nicol, Oskar Ortiz, Tom Plunket, Cindy Rasmussen, Kenneth S. Rhee, Lisa Smith, Brenden Stallard, Steve Sutton, Andrew Wray, Mel Yow, Stephen Zeoli

### Special Thanks from The Journal 3

I would also like to thank Alexis Balmont-Aoutine, Tony Costanzo, Gary L. Filipski, Brian Ford, Pete Hollyer, Allen Johnson, Floyd Johnson, Sheila Perry, Tom Plunkett, and Julie W. Smith for their help with testing the initial release of The Journal 3.

### Special Thanks from The Journal 1.x and 2.x

Many thanks to Steve Kellock, Marty Brown, Andrew Williams, Sylvia Lutnes, Lance Perry, Ken Marineau, Matej Trampus, Edmo Abreu Mendes Filho, Bernard Beam, Chris Victor, Gary L. Filipski, John R. Hutchings, and Alexis Balmont-Aoutine.

## 2.6 Buy The Journal

[Click Here to Buy The Journal! \(only \\$64.99\)](#)

### Benefits of Buying The Journal

- **Keeping a daily journal has never been easier!** The Journal always knows what day it is, and automatically organizes your entries by day, month and year.
- **Get organized!** With The Journal's many options for [categories](#) and [entries](#) you can be as organized as you want to be. Keep your personal journal separate from your work notes, or your dreams separate from your correspondence--but only if you want to.
- **Do it Your Way!** The Journal has no "agenda"--except to be as useful as possible. Use any journaling technique or writing style you want, even none at all. It's completely up to you.
- **The Journal Newsletter!** Sent out monthly, [The Journal Newsletter](#) provides tips for using The Journal, articles about journaling and writing, writing exercises, and more.
- **FREE bug-fixes and feature updates!** All releases of The Journal 8, whether simple bug-fixes or major updates, are FREE! \*
- **FREE technical support via email!** I've tried to make The Journal as easy to use as possible, but if you have any problems, questions, or suggestions, don't hesitate to [email DavidRM Software!](#)

\* Some releases of The Journal may include modules that must be purchased separately. However, if these releases also include bug-fixes or other new features, these will be available free of charge.

For pricing information, including special upgrade rates, see [The Journal Pricing](#).

### How to Buy the Journal via the Web

[Click Here to Buy The Journal!](#)

Your payment will generally be processed and your Registration Keys emailed to you within 24 hours.

### How to Buy the Journal via "Snail" Mail

Print [The Journal Order Form](#), fill it out, and send it along with your payment to:

**DavidRM Software**  
7018 East 78th Place  
Tulsa, OK 74133



Please make checks and money orders payable to **David Michael**.

If you include your email address, you will receive the Registration Keys much quicker. Otherwise, your Registration Keys must be mailed back to you.

Please allow 10-15 business days for the payment to arrive and be processed.  
All payments are processed the business day they are received.

## 2.7 The Journal Pricing

<b>The Journal 8 (Download)</b>	<b>\$64.99</b>
<b>The Journal 8 Complete (Download)</b>	<b>\$99.99</b>

Amounts are in US Dollars.

[Click Here to Buy The Journal!](#)

### Discounts Available

The following discounts are available:

- **Student**
- **Teacher/Educator**
- **US Military** (active duty and veterans)
- **US Law Enforcement**
- **Firefighter/EMT/Nurse**
- **Senior Citizen**
- **Hardship**

To purchase The Journal using one of these discounts, [contact DavidRM Software](#).

### Upgrade Pricing

People who have purchased any previous version of The Journal are eligible for special upgrade pricing.

<b>The Journal 8 Upgrade</b>	<b>\$29.99</b>
------------------------------	----------------

To receive your The Journal 8 Upgrade Coupon Code, you must submit your full name, mailing address, and date of purchase to [DavidRM Software \(support@davidrm.com\)](mailto:support@davidrm.com).

Your Upgrade Coupon Code will be emailed back to you within 24 hours. Enter this code when you purchase The Journal 8 and you will receive \$35 off the regular price (a 55% discount).

### Quantity Pricing

<b>Quantity</b>	<b>Price Per</b>
1-9	\$64.99
10-49	\$61.70
50-99	\$58.45
100+	\$55.20

To purchase The Journal using Quantity Pricing, [contact DavidRM Software](#).

## 2.8 The Journal Order Form

Print this page as an order form.

### The Journal Order Form

Full Name

Email Address

Mailing Address

---

---

---

---

---

<input type="checkbox"/> The Journal 8 (Download)	\$64.99 US
<input type="checkbox"/> The Journal 8 Complete (Download)	\$99.99 US
Includes all available add-ons for The Journal (a \$170 value).	

---

<input type="checkbox"/> The Journal 8 Upgrade (from any previous version)	\$29.99 US
Upgrade Coupon Code: <input type="text"/>	

---

NOTE: To receive your Upgrade Coupon Code for The Journal 8, email your full name, mailing address, and date of purchase to: [support@davidrm.com](mailto:support@davidrm.com)

---

Send payment to:

DavidRM Software  
7018 East 78th Place  
Tulsa, OK 74133

Make check payable to: **David Michael**

Please allow 10-15 business days for the payment to arrive and be processed.  
All payments are processed the business day they are received.

## 2.9 Version History

### The Journal 8

**v8.0.0.1293**

Released 18 September 2018

#### Bugs Fixed

- “Delete Link” not deleting link on email address.
- Changing the default category font isn’t sticking.
- Shouldn’t be able to “Insert Template” on a category folder view.

- “Display first line of entry in tree” option sometimes causing an error in Entry Report.
- Sometimes getting an error after deleting a style.
- Drag-and-drop rearranging of entries isn’t working properly if the category loose-leaf entries option is set to “reverse” but no actual sorting is active.
- Sometimes getting error: “EOleException: The RPC server is unavailable”
- Error on startup: “EInvalidOp: Invalid floating point operation”.
- Sometimes getting an “SQLite3 Error 10 - disk I/O error” when starting to save entries.
- A search result entry that is a sub-entry of a calendar entry is displaying a weird path (ex: “2000-2009\2003\9\23\Name”).
- Search result entries that are sub-entries of a calendar entry sometimes aren’t being sorted properly.
- Pasting text copied from Visual Studio watch window is causing an error.
- Sometimes getting an error when deleting a child topic.

**v8.0.0.1287**

Released 24 July 2018

**Bugs Fixed**

- “EArgumentOutOfRangeException: Argument out of range” when closing.
- Minor tweaks to the primary category entry UI.
- Getting EOleSysError error when closing an inserted MS Word document.
- EJsonParserException: String not closed (1, 62) on loading entries.
- Some calendar entries are displaying 1-year-and-1-month “off”.
- Backup error: “EFCREATEError: Cannot create file” when backup path includes an improper drive letter.
- “Entry Index” report should display the first line of the entry if that category option is set.
- Posting Cyrillic characters to LiveJournal isn’t working.
- Can’t use Ctrl+V to paste into the Search box if the active entry is read only.
- All HTML exports should use UTF8.
- Topic names with ampersands are not escaped in the status bar.
- Error on startup: “EInvalidOp: Invalid floating point operation”
- Error when deleting a topic in Edit Topics.
- Using hot-keys for bold/italic/underline while typing isn’t always updating toolbar buttons.

**v8.0.0.1275**

Released 26 June 2018

**Bugs Fixed**

- When customizing a toolbar, trying to put a “New Separator” on the toolbar is generating an error.
- Getting “Backup Error. #1” when attempting to backup a non-auto-load Journal Volume.
- Mouse wheel isn’t scrolling online help.
- Adding new topics in “Edit Topics” isn’t working.
- The toolbar list of topics isn’t being updated after adding topics with “Tag Entry...” or “Apply Topic to Text...”
- Need to more gracefully catch error when Journal Volume cannot be created.
- After giving a category a password, can’t get back in to that category.
- Entry dates are being saved in universal time instead of local time.
- There is no reason to include the indexed search information in the backup file, as it will be rebuilt after restoring.
- There is no indicator when saving a lot of entries, just a spinning mouse cursor.
- Search by Topics, View All Results with “Display only topic text” checked doesn’t show category or entry headers.

- Search by Topics is unnecessarily indexing entries for normal text search.
- Search by Topics, View All Results with “Display only topic text” checked isn’t displaying content of entries that have been tagged with the topic.
- Deleting a style in Format Styles causing an error if the deleted style is the “Style for following paragraph” of another style.
- Getting an error with hot-key Ctrl+Shift+T (Set Focus to Entry Tree) when entry tree is not visible.
- When selecting multiple cells in a table, if the fonts are the same but the sizes are different, the incorrect font name is displayed on the toolbar.
- Cannot login after renaming user.

## **v8.0.0.1263**

Released 11 June 2018

### **Bugs Fixed**

- On Windows 7, sizeable forms are scaling large (but the controls are properly scaled).
- When starting in-UI search after a paste, it still acts oddly.
- Getting error: “EJsonParserException: Expected "{" but found identifier (1, 2)”
- Shareware nag screen document text isn’t scaling to larger UI sizes.
- Cut to clipboard needs to check for leading/trailing spaces (like delete/backspace).
- Error on pasting text with images: “EInvalidGraphicOperation: Scan line index out of range”
- Installed add-on packages not being upgraded properly.
- Printing a particular page or page range of an entry isn’t working.
- The Journal is becoming unresponsive when opening a Journal Volume.
- When editing Format Styles, got an error: “Cannot focus a disabled or invisible window”
- Search highlighting in the entry tree is out of place when node text includes entry parent title.

## **v8.0.0.1253**

Released 4 June 2018

### **Bugs Fixed**

- Error viewing non-auto-load Journal Volume in JV Properties.
- File links tagged with a topic aren’t upgrading properly.
- Entry calendar charms displaying differently in larger UI modes.
- User Preferences form sized oddly after upgrading.
- Categories with “Start on latest entry by default” aren’t bringing up the last calendar entry.
- Pasting a string into the in-UI search box doesn’t start the search.
- Batch Entry Import: Simple Export file import not working for all cases.
- Sometimes a non-empty calendar entry shows an empty/“new entry” icon.
- Error opening object inserted in an entry.
- Sometimes getting “SQLite3 Error 8 - attempt to write a readonly database” on save.
- Imported HTML with colored text is losing the text color.

## **v8.0.0.1247**

Released 28 May 2018

### **Bugs Fixed**

- “Sync from Backup” getting an error.
- “Updating entry links” portion of “Sync from Backup” is really slow.
- Getting an error when opening The Journal: EJsonParserException: String not closed
- Getting an error if any Journal Volume is marked as not “auto-load”.

- Error on upgrade: Access violation at ... 00ABA346 ... Read of address 00000057

#### v8.0.0.1245

Released 25 May 2018

#### Bugs Fixed

- "What's New in The Journal 8" Notebook document references The Journal 7.
- Error upgrading large (250MB+) entries.
- Error when changing option "Theme applies to form borders".
- Sometimes getting an error when deleting the topic at the top of the tree.
- Resetting password isn't working.
- Error when choosing a custom font color from the toolbar.
- User custom colors aren't being saved properly.

#### v8.0.0.1243 - Initial release

Released 23 May 2018

May 2018: The year 1996, when The Journal 1 was released, keeps getting farther away. =) For The Journal 8, I pulled apart, tinkered with, redesigned and/or replaced a number of internal components, especially the database. This allowed me to vastly improve how The Journal stores entries (and everything else), permitting stronger security and more flexible (and compact) access. Then I made core features of The Journal, like searching and topics and drag-and-drop, even better than before. Overall, the improvements are more subtle than in-your-face and obvious (except maybe the new, more Windows 10-friendly theme), but they are pretty cool nonetheless. At least, I think they are. =)

The Journal 8's new features:

- **Improved searching!** Searching your entries from the main UI is faster and easier than ever before--and encompasses all your active categories!
- **Improved security!** Your entries have never been safer! The Journal now uses 128-bit AES (American Encryption Standard) throughout, and uses salted, iterated hashing to secure your passwords.
- **Improved topics!**
- **Improved drag-and-drop support!** Drag-and-drop entries between categories, between users, and even Journal Volumes! Drag-and-drop files directly into the entry tree!
- **PDF support!** Easily print (or save or export) your entries to PDFs!
- **More word processing power!**
- **New visual themes!**

## The Journal 7

April 2015: "**The Journal, Evolved!**" The Journal turned 18 years old in June of last year (making it my second child to reach voting age). The Journal 1 was written for Windows 95, and supported only daily entries. No "Notebook" category. No reminders. And I was the only one using it. =)

So much has changed since then. The Journal has been in almost constant development, growing and evolving from the feedback of the many, many incredible users who have contacted me over the years, sending in suggestions and bug reports and wish lists. With The Journal 7, I hope to have granted more than a few wishes, including some of my own.

The Journal 7's new features:

- **Search anywhere!** See lightning-fast search results in any category. Search results update as you type. Plus, in-entry searching has been made even better, making it easier to see search terms and navigate between them.
- **Search everything!** The new, improved Search Entries shows you search results as you type, and allows you to easily add or remove entire categories from your search. Plus, you can now save your searches.
- **More word-processing power!** Format your text with new, more powerful styles, including many new options at the paragraph and character levels. Use typographical quotes and apostrophes (AKA "curly quotes"). View two entries at once with split-screen editing. Shut out the world and focus on your writing with the new distraction-free, full-screen editing mode. Search-and-replace within all entries of a category. Save and load DocX files.
- **More flexible user interface!** Display your categories as a tree or nested tabs. Color-code your categories. Sort your loose-leaf entries by name, date created, or even last date updated. Fully customize menus, toolbars, and even command hot-keys.
- **Word clouds!** See word clouds for your categories based on your entry text or on the topics you have assigned to your entries.
- **Better integration with Windows 8 (and whatever comes next)!**
- **New visual themes!** The Journal 7 includes a new set of visual themes and a more cohesive look-and-feel (but you can still use the old skins, if you want).
- **Improved security!** With salted passwords and a new layer of encryption, The Journal 7 keeps your entries safer than ever.
- **Recover accidentally deleted entries!**
- **Streamlined backup, restore, and upgrading!**

**v7.0.0.1099** - Released 5 December 2017

**v7.0.0.1095** - Released 4 September 2017

**v7.0.0.1091** - Released 14 August 2017

**v7.0.0.1089** - Released 7 August 2017

**v7.0.0.1077** - Released 20 February 2017

**v7.0.0.1073** - Released 1 November 2016

**v7.0.0.1065** - Released 3 October 2016

**v7.0.0.1057** - Released 29 August 2016

**v7.0.0.1045** - Released 8 August 2016

**v7.0.0.1031** - Released 25 July 2016

**v7.0.0.1007** - Released 16 May 2016

**v7.0.0.987** - Released 7 March 2016

**v7.0.0.969** - Released 1 February 2016

**v7.0.0.951** - Released 16 December 2015

**v7.0.0.945** - Released 20 October 2015

**v7.0.0.935** - Released 14 September 2015

**v7.0.0.923** - Released 11 August 2015

**v7.0.0.917** - Released 27 July 2015

**v7.0.0.903** - Released 1 June 2015

**v7.0.0.897** - Released 11 May 2015

**v7 (7.0.0.893)** - Released 24 April 2015

## The Journal 6

June 2012: My mission statement for The Journal 6 was: **"The Journal, Even Better!"** I wanted to make The Journal easier to use, while also adding some powerful new features like synchronizing and indexed text searching. Work on The Journal 6 began in June 2011 while my wife and I were waiting for our 3rd child to arrive. He was late, but was eventually induced to make his appearance. Which appearance then seriously slowed The Journal 6 development for a while. :-)

The Journal 6 new features:

- **Lightning-fast searches!** Even if you have thousands of entries in hundreds of categories, searching them is fast and easy.
- **Synchronize multiple copies of The Journal!** Have The Journal on your laptop at work and your desktop at home? Keeping them in sync is easier than ever. You can sync from another Journal Volume, a backup file, or any of The Journal's export files.
- **Synchronize The Journal with your mobile- and tablet-based software!** Import your entries and notes from such products as Evernote, Penzu, and more. The Journal also supports exporting to the Xml-based ATOM publishing format which can be imported by other products.
- **Use The Journal with automatic backup/sync-ing software!** The Journal's new, single-file database configuration is faster, takes up less space on your hard drive or USB/Flash drive, and makes it much easier to use with products like DropBox.
- **More!**
  - Improved printing, exporting, and importing!
  - New Entry Report Wizard (on the Tools menu), with new and improved reports!
  - Improved topic support and reporting!
  - Improved international character support, including Insert Symbol (on the Insert menu)!
  - More options for categories, including specifying the day the week starts and sorting options for loose-leaf entries.
  - New entry editor options like linking images, a running word count on the status bar, improved highlighting, and format painter.

v6.0.0.779 - Released 21 October 2014  
 v6.0.0.773 - Released 15 September 2014  
 v6.0.0.767 - Released 5 August 2014  
 v6.0.0.765 - Released 4 August 2014  
 v6.0.0.759 - Released 30 June 2014  
 v6.0.0.751 - Released 2 June 2014  
 v6.0.0.743 - Released 31 March 2014  
 v6.0.0.739 - Released 3 February 2014  
 v6.0.0.727 - Released 6 January 2014  
 v6.0.0.721 - Released 4 December 2013  
 v6.0.0.719 - Released 4 November 2013  
 v6.0.0.709 - Released 3 October 2013  
 v6.0.0.705 - Released 27 August 2013  
 v6.0.0.693 - Released 1 August 2013  
 v6.0.0.691 - Released 10 June 2013  
 v6.0.0.675 - Released 9 April 2013  
 v6.0.0.669 - Released 12 February 2013  
 v6.0.0.657 - Released 11 December 2012  
 v6.0.0.635 - Released 7 November 2012  
 v6.0.0.621 - Released 26 September 2012  
 v6.0.0.609 - Released 6 August 2012  
 v6.0.0.597 - Released 18 July 2012  
 v6 (v6.0.0.589) - Released 9 July 2012

## The Journal 5.1

December 2009: The Journal 5.1 is a feature update and bug-fix of The Journal 5. Work on The Journal 5.1 began in late October 2009. My goal for The Journal 5.1 was to add some of the features that had been planned for the initial release of The Journal 5 but, due to time constraints, had been put off to the future.

The Journal 5.1 fixes some bugs (see the list below), updates a few third-party components, and adds some significant new features:

- **Improvements to skinning and more new skins!** Many of the skins have been updated, including The Journal's default skin (BlueBrilliant).
- **New toolbar icons** for a number of commands, plus the option to use The Journal 4's icons for toolbars, menus and the entry tree.
- **Localization support** - As new language translations of The Journal become available, they will be added.
- **Improvements for using The Journal over a network** with multiple simultaneous users.
- **[View your Outlook calendar reminders](#) in The Journal!**
- **Support for "Quick Blogcast" blog tool and new blog posting options.**
- **And, finally, you can [wrap text around images](#) in your entries!**

v5.1.0.497 - Released 11 April 2012  
 v5.1.0.489 - Released 14 February 2012  
 v5.1.0.481 - Released 14 November 2011  
 v5.1.0.469 - Released 8 August 2011  
 v5.1.0.461 - Released 6 June 2011  
 v5.1.0.453 - Released 24 January 2011  
 v5.1.0.451 - Released 27 December 2010  
 v5.1.0.435 - Released 4 October 2010  
 v5.1.0.427 - Released 10 May 2010  
 v5.1.0.417 - Released 3 March 2010  
 v5.1.0.409 - Released 27 January 2010  
 v5.1.0.407 - Released 25 January 2010  
 v5.1 (v5.1.0.393) - Released 15 December 2009

## The Journal 5

July 2009: My plan for The Journal 5, which began development in September 2007, can be summed up as "The Journal Even Better". I wanted to improve all the major parts of The Journal--the database, the internal data structures, the user interface--and provide more support for international users. Plus I wanted to offer additional category and entry options, more reports and other tools, and, finally, to offer a selection of "skins" for the user interface.

I think I achieved most of that--even if it took a bit longer than I expected.

In short, The Journal 5 is an inside-out redesign of The Journal, preserving all the great journaling and writing features that have accumulated over the years and adding some cool new features and capabilities.

The Journal 5 adds lots of significant new features:

### Updated user interface:

- Choose your favorite "skin" from the many, many available (180+).
- Quickly switch between logged in users and open Journal Volumes with their (optional) tabs.

### Updated Journal Volumes:

- No more 2 GB limit. Store up to 128 GB in your Journal Volumes.
- Have as many Journal Volumes as you want, all open at the same time.
- Be more secure with the [improved backup and restore features](#), with options to copy your backup file to separate locations automatically.

### More category options:

- You can have categories that [create new entries for you every century, decade, year, month, week, day, and hour.](#)



- See a month or a year at a time with the new month and year calendar views.
- Use the [day planner](#) to see your reminders for today or the whole week.
- Automatically "stamp" your entries with current date and time.
- Edit your entries with WYSIWYG (what-you-see-is-what-you-get) formatting.

**More entry options:**

- Your calendar category entries can have loose-leaf sub-entry "attachments".
- Drag and drop entries between categories with ease.
- Select multiple entries and copy (or cut) them to the Windows clipboard--then paste those entries into another category of The Journal or even into a word processor like MS Word.
- Insert media files (audio & video) into your entries, and play them back within The Journal.
- Take advantage of the new (optional) [grammar checking features](#) to automatically change i to I and automatically capitalize the first word of a sentence.
- Use topics to mark blocks of text within an entry, or to tag an entire entry.
- Be even more organized with topics that have sub-topics (that have sub-topics, that have sub-topics...).
- Easily [wrap text around inserted images](#).

**More search options:**

- Automatically include sub-topics when searching by topics.
- Search for multiple topics with either AND (all) or OR (any) logic.
- Search in reminder notes.
- Limit your search to whole words.

**And more:**

- See your MS Outlook calendar reminders in The Journal.
- Export your categories and entries to HTML and get a Web-page-like list of categories and entries.
- Create a wiki-like set of entries with automatically updated links.
- Run a report of those entries that you've created or updated in the last week, month, year or other date range.
- Post to Blogger (Google) without getting an annoying error message (and lots of other minor fixes and changes).

v5.0.0.367 - Released 5 October 2009

v5.0.0.359 - Released 21 September 2009

v5.0.0.355 - Released 9 September 2009

v5.0.0.347 - Released 31 August 2009

v5.0 (v5.0.0.341) - Released 26 August 2009

## The Journal 4.1

**(March 2006 - August 2009)**

March 2006: Though not a major upgrade like the one from v3 to v4, The Journal 4.1 is still a significant step forward. [Reminders & Tasks](#) have now been added to The Journal, supplying whole new ways you can use The Journal to organize your life and life's work. Set reminders for daily [tasks](#), [monthly appointments](#), [special days and anniversaries](#), and more! And with the new [entry locking](#) features for shared categories, The Journal edges closer to becoming a true multi-user, maybe even a collaborative, platform. I look forward to building on all of the 4.1 additions and changes as The Journal continues to grow.

August 2007: The last major new feature added to The Journal 4.1 was the option to have multiple entries on a given date. Such an obvious feature (in retrospect), and yet added so late. I'm always surprised by how The Journal continues to evolve.

v4.1.0.253 - Released 5 February 2008  
v4.1.0.247 - Released 10 December 2007  
v4.1.0.241 - Released 15 October 2007  
v4.1.0.239 - Released 9 October 2007  
v4.1.0.237 - Released 4 September 2007  
v4.1.0.231 - Released 13 June 2007  
v4.1.0.229 - Released 11 June 2007  
v4.1.0.219 - Released 8 May 2007  
v4.1.0.213 - Released 23 April 2007  
v4.1.0.207 - Released 19 February 2007  
v4.1.0.195 - Released 4 December 2006  
v4.1.0.189 - Released 2 October 2006  
v4.1.0.181 - Released 12 June 2006  
v4.1.0.177 - Released 26 April 2006  
v4.1.0.175 - Released 17 April 2006

## The Journal 4

**(November 2004 - March 2006)**

August 2004: Though the story of The Journal 4 lacks the drama of The Journal 3's grueling development period, it's an important upgrade nonetheless. Built on the foundation created in v3, v4 takes The Journal to new levels of power and ease of use.

Work on The Journal 4 began in December 2003, with early efforts centered on switching from using the Windows Rich Text Common Control to the very powerful TRichView components created by Sergey Tkachenko. This was a huge change, both in source code and in philosophy, because The Journal was originally built around the rich text edit, and probably would not have existed except for that feature of Windows 95. After years spent tweaking and cajoling (and cursing) the rich text edit to get it to do things that Microsoft probably never meant for it to do, I suffered a few withdrawals. However, this one change, by itself, made possible a large portion of The Journal 4's new features, including background images for entries, print preview, tables, and on and on. So I'm past the withdrawals now, and not looking back.

With the new entry editor in place, I shifted to adding numerous other features that users have asked for over the years, such as n-depth category nesting, user-created Calendar Charms, and daily/weekly reporting. Beyond user requests, there were other extensions that I wanted to make, such as the ability to install and run The Journal on read-only CDROM's, that would make The Journal more stable overall and useful in new arenas.

By late August 2004, I had implemented the last of the planned additions and on 1 September I handed The Journal 4 over to a small group of testers. There's nothing like user testing to help smooth out a new interface and add the necessary polish to new features--and point out the obvious features and extensions you somehow forgot.

The Journal 4 added:

- A more modern look-and-feel
- Improved editing capabilities, including:
  - Background images for entries
  - More powerful and more flexible text styles
  - Improved image handling (faster saving and loading, resizing, and more)
  - Tables
  - HTML importing and improved HTML exporting

- Paragraph borders and background colors
- Outline mode
- Improved bullets and numbering
- Improved auto-replace, supporting both formatted and unformatted text
- Assigning topics to blocks of text within an entry
- Improved printing, including print preview
- Improved searching, with:
  - Google-like results presentation, with excerpts of found text and links to the found entries
  - Search text highlighting in found entries
  - Date range limiting for standard categories
  - Searching by topic, or by image description
- Daily/weekly/etc "reporting" for standard categories, with printing
- Support for user-created Calendar Charms and entry background images
- Improved blog support, with posting of images (if the blog supports posting images)
- Web page "archiving" within entries
- Improved arranging of loose-leaf entries and categories
- Improved category "nesting", so you can have sub-categories of sub-categories of sub-categories of...
- New category options like "Read Only" and "Folder Only"
- The ability to install and run The Journal on self-contained, removable media, like a USB flash drive or CDROM
- Improved database speed and security

v4.0.0.163 - Released 6 December 2005  
 v4.0.0.161 - Released 24 October 2005  
 v4.0.0.157 - Released 26 September 2005  
 v4.0.0.153 - Released 29 August 2005  
 v4.0.0.147 - Released 20 July 2005  
 v4.0.0.145 - Released 13 July 2005  
 v4.0.0.141 - Released 11 April 2005  
 v4.0.0.137 - Released 2 February 2005  
 v4.0.0.135 - Released 24 January 2005  
 v4.0.0.133 - Released 29 December 2004  
 v4.0.0.127 - Released 8 December 2004  
 v4.0.0.123 - Released 2 December 2004  
 v4.0 - Released 29 November 2004

## The Journal 3

**(November 2001 - November 2004)**

(November 2001): The Journal 3 is a complete re-design and re-write of The Journal, incorporating years of accumulated feedback and suggestions. Since The Journal was first released in 1996, users have sent in their suggestions for features and extensions. As much as possible, these suggestions were incorporated. But some suggestions were beyond what the original design of The Journal could tolerate. There was only so far that The Journal's feature set could be stretched without starting over from scratch.

Begun in the summer of 1999, development on The Journal 3 proceeded slower than expected. Those initial delays were caused by several factors. I was (and still am) co-owner of another software company (Samu Games, <http://www.samugames.com>) and other projects came up that stalled the development of The Journal 3. Plus there was the ever-present need to support the current version of The Journal. By the end of 1999, only The Journal 3's new database configuration was completed.

In 2000, two major projects with Samu Games prevented significant work on The Journal 3. The Journal 2.3 was released in early 2000, and The Journal 2.4 was begun in the fall of the year. Though the 2.3 release was a relatively straightforward update of The Journal 2.2. The 2.4 release incorporated some of the features that had been designed for The Journal 3. New word processing features (like numbered lists and multi-level undo), improved image handling, and especially the new export/import format were all from work done for The Journal 3.

Most of the work on The Journal 3 that occurred during 2000 was on the new user interface. There was a lot of experimentation with new layouts, new configurations, and new ways of representing the categories and entries in the database. Some of it worked, and was kept. A lot of it, though, proved "iffy at best" and was discarded (or turned into a "user preference", default off).

In March 2001, following the release of The Journal 2.4, I realized that I had spent too much time on "research and development". If I expected to release The Journal 3 in this lifetime, I was going to have to stop thinking up new features to add and experiment with. So the feature set of The Journal 3 was "frozen", and I began working on getting The Journal 3 done.

Interestingly enough, while The Journal 3 already sported quite a few features that The Journal 2.x would never be able to duplicate, The Journal 2.x had many more features that had not yet been implemented in The Journal 3. So to get The Journal 3 "done" I had to get all of the existing 2.x features working in the new version. Everything from simple options like "minimize to system tray" to more complex features like entry templates had yet to be added to The Journal 3.

This turned out to be the single largest effort in the development of The Journal 3. The Journal had accumulated quite a few features in its 5+ years, and re-doing them for The Journal 3 proved to take more time than I estimated. In August 2001, 6 months later, the last of the 2.x feature set was finally added to The Journal 3.

In September 2001, The Journal 3 was handed over to a small number of volunteers to see how it would stand up. With their help, most of the bugs and issues were found and either fixed or resolved. The last bit of testing and polishing occurred when The Journal 3 "pre-release version" was made available in mid-November.

The Journal has already grown beyond my original vision for the project. I'm excited to see what new directions the product will head in the future.

2004 Afternote: The Journal grew significantly after the initial release of v3. Here's a list of the major improvements and features added to The Journal 3 from November 2001 to October 2004:

- Improved printing
- Improved "Search Entries..."
- Improved entry navigation
- Improved entry templates
- Improved initial defaults for new users
- Improved entry export and import
- Improved user interface, including lots of new hot-keys
- Improved entry links and internet links
- Improved database maintenance
- Improved documentation
- Calendar Charms
- Add-on package support
- MemoryGrabber add-on package
- Writing Prompts 1 add-on package
- Blog support

v3.0.0.73 -Released 19 January 2005  
 v3.0.0.71 -Released 22 September 2004  
 v3.0.0.67 -Released 13 July 2004  
 v3.0.0.65 -Released 13 April 2004  
 v3.0.0.63 -Released 6 April 2004  
 v3.0.0.61 -Released 10 February 2004  
 v3.0.0.59 -Released 29 December 2003  
 v3.0.0.57 -Released 15 December 2003  
 v3.0.0.51 -Released 6 October 2003  
 v3.0.0.49 -Released 15 July 2003  
 v3.0.0.47 -Released 9 July 2003  
 v3.0.0.45 -Released 10 April 2003  
 v3.0.0.43 -Released 24 February 2003  
 v3.0.0.41 -Released 9 December 2002  
 v3.0.0.39 -Released 26 August 2002  
 v3.0.0.35 -Released 2 April 2002  
 v3.0.0.33 -Released 18 February 2002  
 v3.0.0.31 -Released 12 February 2002  
 v3.0.0.27 -Released 6 February 2002  
 v3.0.0.25 -Released 4 February 2002  
 v3.0.0.23 -Released 7 January 2002  
 v3.0.0.21 -Released 17 December 2001  
 v3.0.0.19 -Released 3 December 2001  
 v3.0 -Released 28 November 2001

## The Journal 2

**(September 1998 - October 2001)**

The Journal 2.0, released in September 1998, built on the feature set that had been finalized in the 1.51 release. More word-processing and security features were added, and database maintenance and stability were greatly enhanced. Throughout the 2.x series of releases, The Journal continued to mature, though not at the same pace as before. Refinement and extension replaced a headlong rush to add new features. The 2.4 release of The Journal, coming nearly a year after the previous release, was the most significant of the 2.x updates after 2.0.

v2.43 - Released September 28, 2001.  
 v2.42 - Released August 20, 2001.  
 v2.41 - Released April 16, 2001.  
 v2.40 - Released February 9, 2001.  
 v2.30 - Released April 7, 2000.  
 v2.20 - Released December 6, 1999.  
 v2.11 - Released June 21, 1999.  
 v2.10 - Released April 5, 1999.  
 v2.02 - Released February 1, 1999.  
 v2.01 - Released November 11, 1998.  
 v2.00 - Released September 30, 1998.

## The Journal 1

**(October 1996 - August 1998)**

v1.30 was the first shareware release of The Journal, made available in October, 1996. This was a period of expanding features for The Journal. Hardly a month went by without a new release coming out

with more features--and bug-fixes for previously added features. This "growth spurt" period went on for nearly a year before finally slowing down.

With the release of The Journal 1.5 in January, 1998, The Journal became a mature software product.

v1.51 - Released February 20, 1998.

v1.50 - Released January 30, 1998.

v1.44 - Released December 12, 1997.

v1.43 - Released September 26, 1997

v1.42 - Released July 19, 1997

v1.41 - Released July 1, 1997

v1.40 - Released June 28, 1997

v1.39 - Released June 7, 1997

v1.38 - Released March 23, 1997

v1.37 - Released February 9, 1997

v1.36 - Released January 12, 1997

v1.35 - Released December 29, 1996

v1.34 - Released December 13, 1996

v1.33 - Released November 25, 1996

v1.32 - Released November 15, 1996

v1.31 - Released October 14, 1996

v1.30 - First Shareware Release October 11, 1996

## The Journal 1 - The Freeware Days

(June-September 1996)

The Journal started out as a quick project, mostly as a way to learn how to use Delphi. Fittingly, most of the original users of The Journal were other Delphi programmers who downloaded it from the various "Made in Delphi" web pages. Feedback from these and other users prompted me to extend The Journal significantly, and release it as shareware.

v1.21 - Released August 12, 1996

v1.20 - Released August 9, 1996

v1.1 - Released July 8, 1996

v1.0 - Initial Release. June 18, 1996

## 2.10 What's New in The Journal 8

Keep a diary! Maintain a knowledgebase! Write a book! You can do it all with The Journal 8!

### More Power!

- **Improved searching!** See your search results across all categories--as you type! No need to open the Search Entries form (though you still can, for more options and even more control over the results).
- **Improved topics!** The Journal 8's topics are more flexible and easier to use.
- **Improved drag-and-drop!** Drag-and-drop entries--or entire categories--from one category to another, even across users and Journal Volumes!

- **More writing power!** Format your text with new, more powerful styles, including many new options at the paragraph and character levels. View two entries at once with split-screen editing. Shut out the world and focus on your writing with the new distraction-free, full-screen editing mode. Search-and-replace within all entries of a category.
- **Word clouds!** See word clouds for your categories based on your entry text or on the topics you have assigned to your entries.
- **Improved printing, exporting, and importing!** Print, export or save to PDF format!
- **Improved international character support!** Including improved support for right-to-left languages!
- **Improved image/photo support,** including image rotation, thumbnails, and doodling (directly in the entry or on other images)!
- **Improved media file support,** with playback using Windows Media Player! Insert files up to 225MB in your entries!
- **More options for categories,** including specifying the day the week starts and sorting options for loose-leaf entries.
- **New entry editor options** like hot-linking images, a running word count on the status bar, format painter, and improved text highlighting.
- **New Entry Report Wizard** (on the Tools menu), with new and improved reports!

## Improved Security & Stability!

- **Your entries have never been safer!** Using 128-bit AES encryption, and salted, iterated hashing for your passwords, The Journal 8 keeps your entries safer than any previous version.
- **Recover accidentally deleted entries!**
- **Streamlined backup, restore, and upgrading!**
- **Easily use The Journal with automatic backup/sync-ing software!** The Journal's new, single-file database configuration is *faster* and *uses less space* on your hard drive or USB/Flash drive, *and* makes it much easier to use The Journal with products like DropBox.

## More Convenience!

- **More flexible user interface!** Display your categories as a tree or nested tabs. Color-code your categories. Sort your loose-leaf entries by name, date created, or even last date updated. Fully customize menus, toolbars, and even command hot-keys. Use drag-and-drop to organize your categories and entries exactly the way you want.
- **New visual themes!** The Journal 8 includes a new set of visual themes and a more cohesive look-and-feel.
- **Synchronize multiple copies of The Journal!** Have The Journal on your laptop at work and your desktop at home? Keeping them in sync is easier than ever. You can sync from another Journal Volume, a backup file, or any of The Journal's export files.

- **Synchronize The Journal with your mobile- and tablet-based software!** Import your entries and notes from such products as Evernote, Penzu, and more.
- **Give your tired eyes a rest!** Today's high-def displays (especially newer tablet displays) come with tiny print that can be very hard to read. The Journal includes new, easier-to-read toolbar icons, *and* lets you see what you're typing!



## How to Use The Journal

### 3 How to Use The Journal

#### [Step 1. Getting Started](#)

The first things you have to do after installing The Journal are [create your first Journal Volume](#) and [your login name and \(optional\) password](#).

Don't worry: Most users can just click right through these and use the default settings.

#### [Step 2. Making Entries](#)

Once you have your login name and password, you can run The Journal and start [making entries](#) and [printing entries](#). And since you almost certainly want more than text in your entries, this section shows you how to [insert images and media files](#) into your entries.

#### [Step 3. Using Categories](#)

The Journal automatically creates a "Daily Journal" category and a "Notebook" category for you. But you aren't limited to just those. [This section](#) describes the difference between a calendar category and a loose-leaf category, and shows you [how to create a new category](#).

#### [Step 4. Creating Additional Logins](#)

Want your spouse to have his or her own login (with password) in The Journal? This tells you [how to create a new user login](#).

#### [Step 5. Creating Additional Journal Volumes](#)

One Journal Volume is enough for most users, but if you need more than one, this section tells you [how to create a new Journal Volume](#).

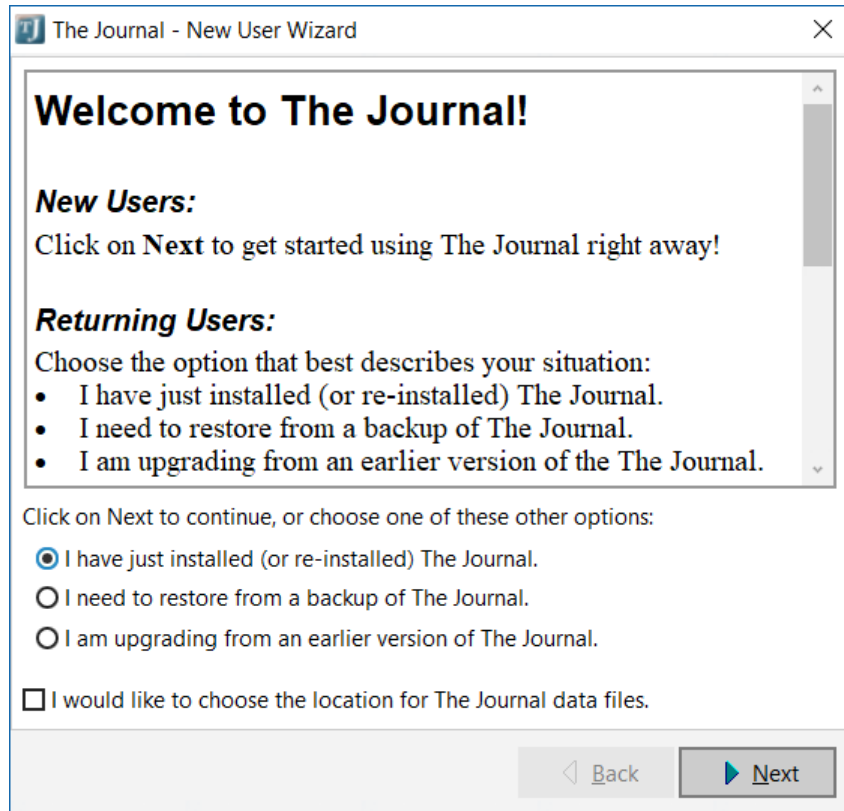
#### [Step 6. Maintaining The Journal](#)

Finally, this section gives you the basics of [backing up your entries](#).

Also check out the [Frequently Asked Questions](#).

### 3.1 Getting Started

The first time you start The Journal, the **New User Wizard** is run automatically to help you.



Don't worry: Most users can just click right through these and use the default settings.

The most important part of this process is [Creating your login name](#).

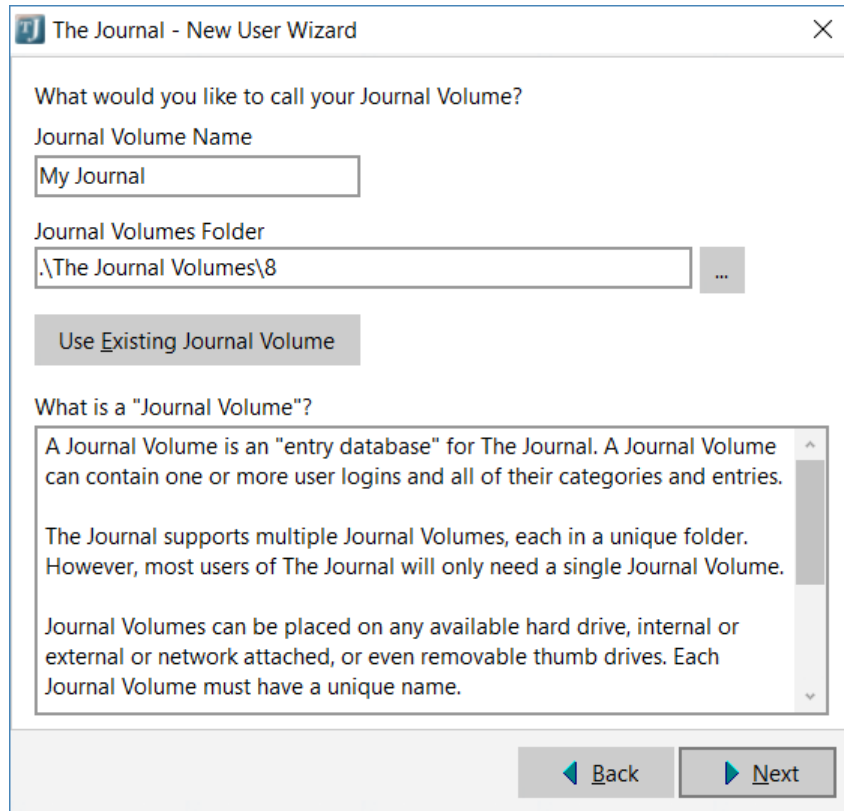
Once you've done that, you're ready to start [making entries in The Journal](#).

### 3.1.1 Creating Your First Journal Volume

Unless you check the option "**I would like to choose the location of The Journal's data files**", The Journal will handle this step for you automatically and you will be taken to the next step: [Creating Your Login Name](#).

#### What is a Journal Volume?

A Journal Volume is an "entry database". The Journal Volume created during this step will hold your login name, your categories, and all of your entries.



If you are unsure about the Journal Volume location, simply accept the default settings by clicking on **Next**.

NOTE: The default settings are recommended for most users.

## Journal Volume Name

The default Journal Volume name is **"My Journal"**. You can set this to be any name you want.

## The Journal Volumes Folder

The Journal Volumes folder is the path where your first Journal Volume will be created as a sub-folder. If you later create additional Journal Volumes, they will also use this same base path.

The default path for the Journal Volumes folder is:

**My Documents\The Journal Volumes\8\**

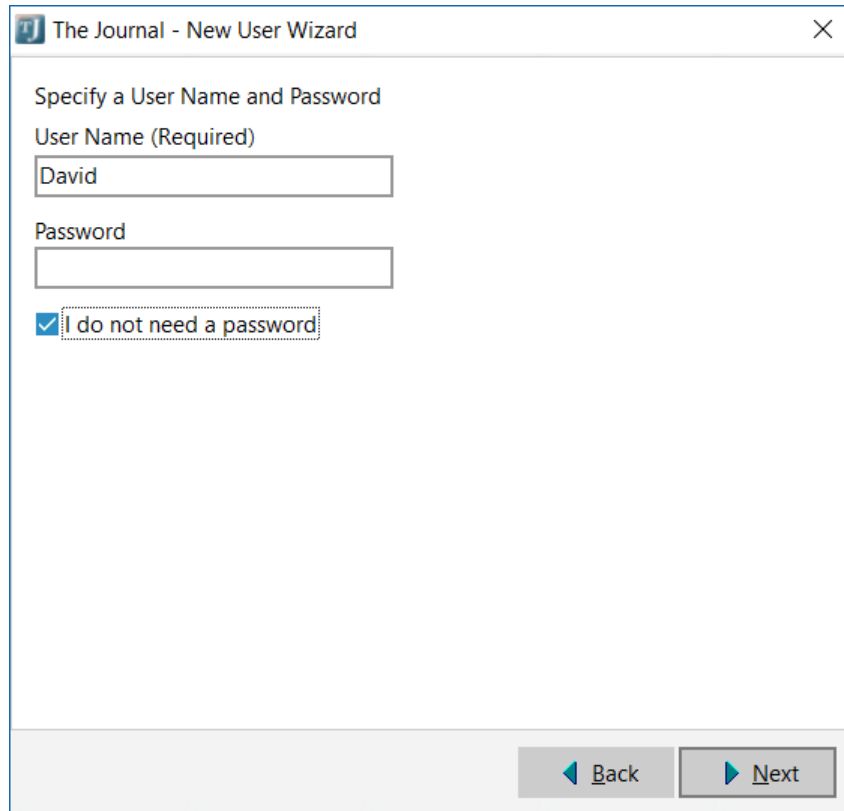
If you are installing The Journal on a USB/external hard drive, the default path is relative to the installed path:

**.\The Journal Volumes\8\**

See [Journal Volumes](#) for more information about Journal Volumes.

### 3.1.2 Creating Your Login Name

Your login name and password are how you access The Journal.



## User Name

Your login name defaults to your Windows user name. You can change this to be any name you want (and you can have as many login names as you want, each with their own categories and entries; [more about that here](#)).

## Password

Type in the password you want to use for this login name.

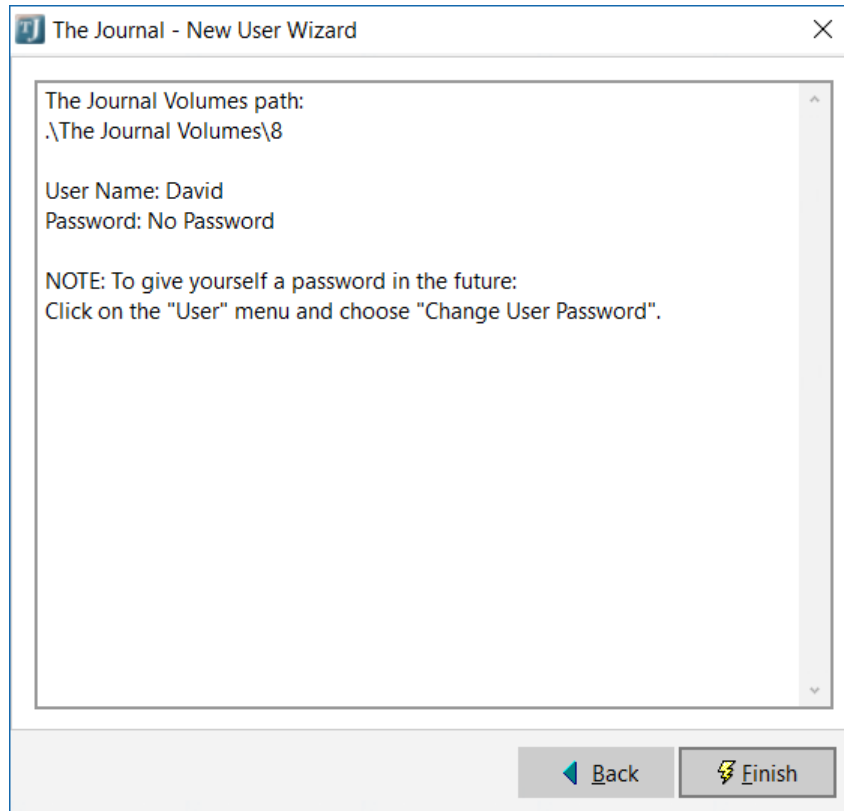
If you do not want a password, simply check the **"I don't need a password"** option. This gives you a blank password and sets the **Auto-Login** option so you aren't prompted for a password when you login.

If you change your mind later, you can always give yourself a password by clicking on the **User** menu, un-check the **Auto-Login** option and then choose **Change User Password...**

When you're ready, click on **Next** to continue. If you have chosen a password, you'll be asked to confirm your password (type it in again exactly the same) before continuing.

### 3.1.3 Confirm Your Journal Volume and Login Name

The last step is confirm your Journal Volume and login name.

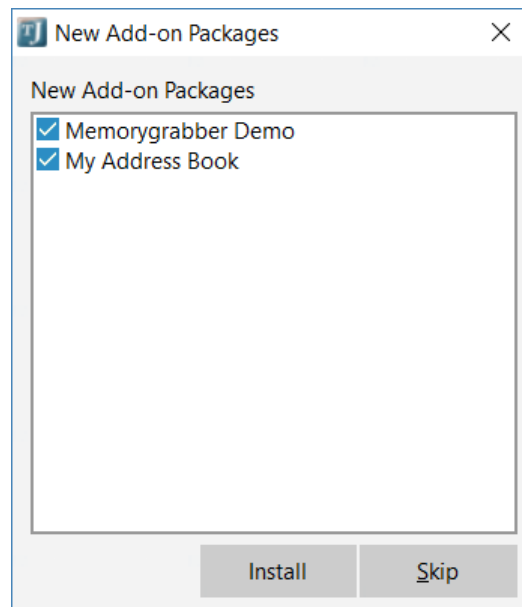


If everything looks good, click on **Finish**.

This will create your Journal Volume and login name and log you in.

### 3.1.4 Installing Add-on Packages

If you purchased The Journal with add-on packages (like the MemoryGrabber, Devotional Prompts 1, or Steve Pavlinas Templates) or chose to install any optional add-on packages (like My Address Book), you will now be prompted to install those now.



Un-check any add-ons you don't want to install (you can always install them later by clicking on the **Tools** menu and choosing **Add-ons...**) and click on **Install**. Or click on **Skip** to install no add-ons at this time.

Now you're ready to start [making entries in The Journal](#).

## 3.2 Making Entries in The Journal

Making entries in The Journal is easy.

### Making Entries in "Daily Journal"

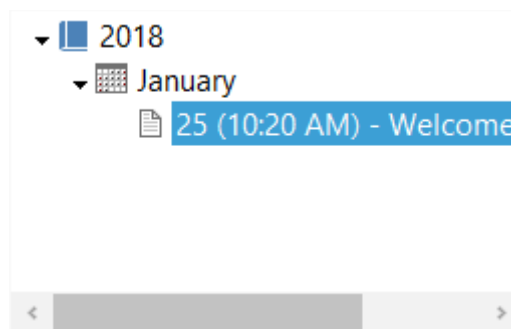
The **"Daily Journal"** category that is created for you automatically is a [calendar category](#). You'll notice that The Journal has created a single entry for the current date. You can type in this entry just as you would a word processor or text editor.

To create a new, blank entry for today, press F9 (or click on the **Entry** menu, find the **Create New Entry** sub-menu and choose **Create Entry: Document**).

To create a past entry, simply click on a past date on the calendar. A new, empty entry will be brought up for you. The entry is not added to the "tree" of dates below the calendar yet, because the entry is empty. Once you begin adding text to the entry, then it will show up in the date tree.

January 2018						
S	M	T	W	T	F	S
31	1	2	3	4	5	6
7	8	9	10	11	12	13
14	15	16	17	18	19	20
21	22	23	24	25	26	27
28	29	30	31	1	2	3
4	5	6	7	8	9	10

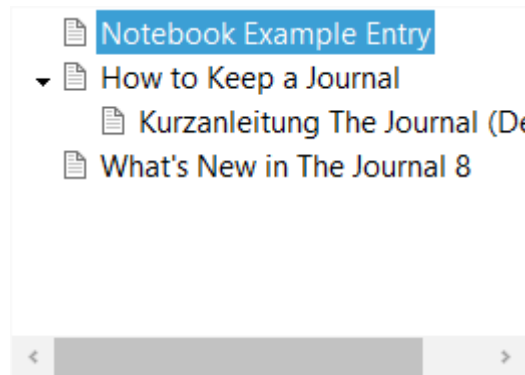
As the days and weeks go by, your collection of entries will grow. In the tree of dates, your entries will be organized by year and month.



### Making Entries in "Notebook"

To the left of the entry editor, just past the calendar, is the tree of available categories. The selected category in the tree is "Daily Journal". Below that is "Notebook". Click on "Notebook" now to make it active. You can switch between "Daily Journal" and "Notebook" at any time. The Journal will keep your entries separate for you.

The **"Notebook"** category is a [loose-leaf category](#). Unlike "Daily Journal", entries in "Notebook" are not tied to a date. Instead, the entries are named.



To create a new entry, click on the **Entry** menu, choose **Create New Entry**, and then **Document** (or press **F9**). This will create a new document entry. Enter the name you want the entry to have and hit ENTER. You now have a new loose-leaf entry following the first one in the tree.

"Notebook Entry" is the default name of entries created in this category. To change the name of the entry, click on the entry in the tree (or press F2). Then type in what you want to call the entry.

Press F10 ("Create New Sub-Entry") to create a new entry as a sub-entry of the current entry.

A loose-leaf entry can have as many sub-entries as you want. Loose-Leaf entries can also be organized by dragging and dropping them in the tree.

Click on the second entry in the tree and "drag" it up to the first entry. Then release it. The second entry is now a "sub-entry" of the first entry.

This gives you the basics of creating and using entries in The Journal.

For more information, see [Entries](#).

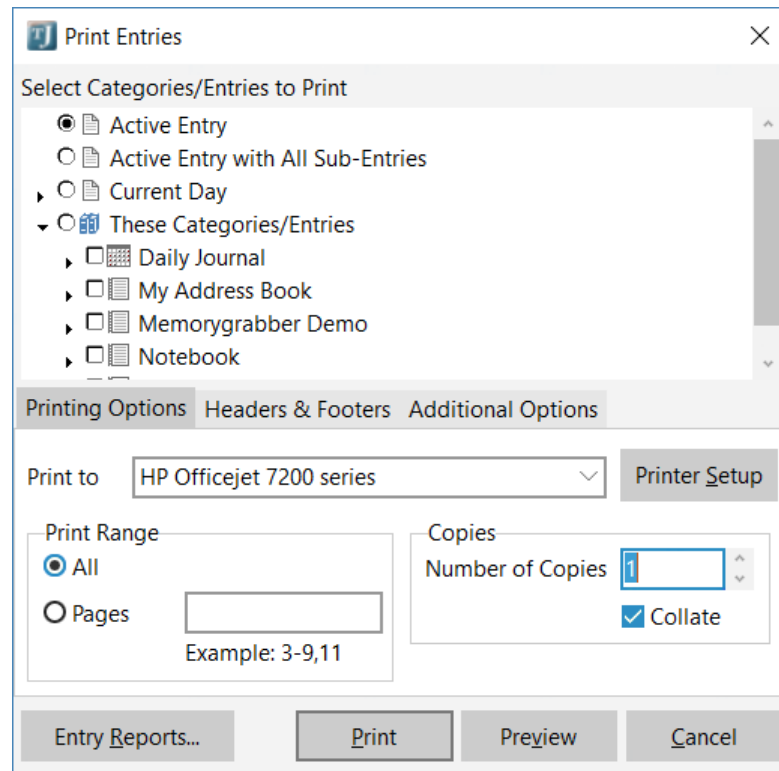
### 3.2.1 Printing Entries

Once you have created entries in The Journal, a common task is to print those entries.

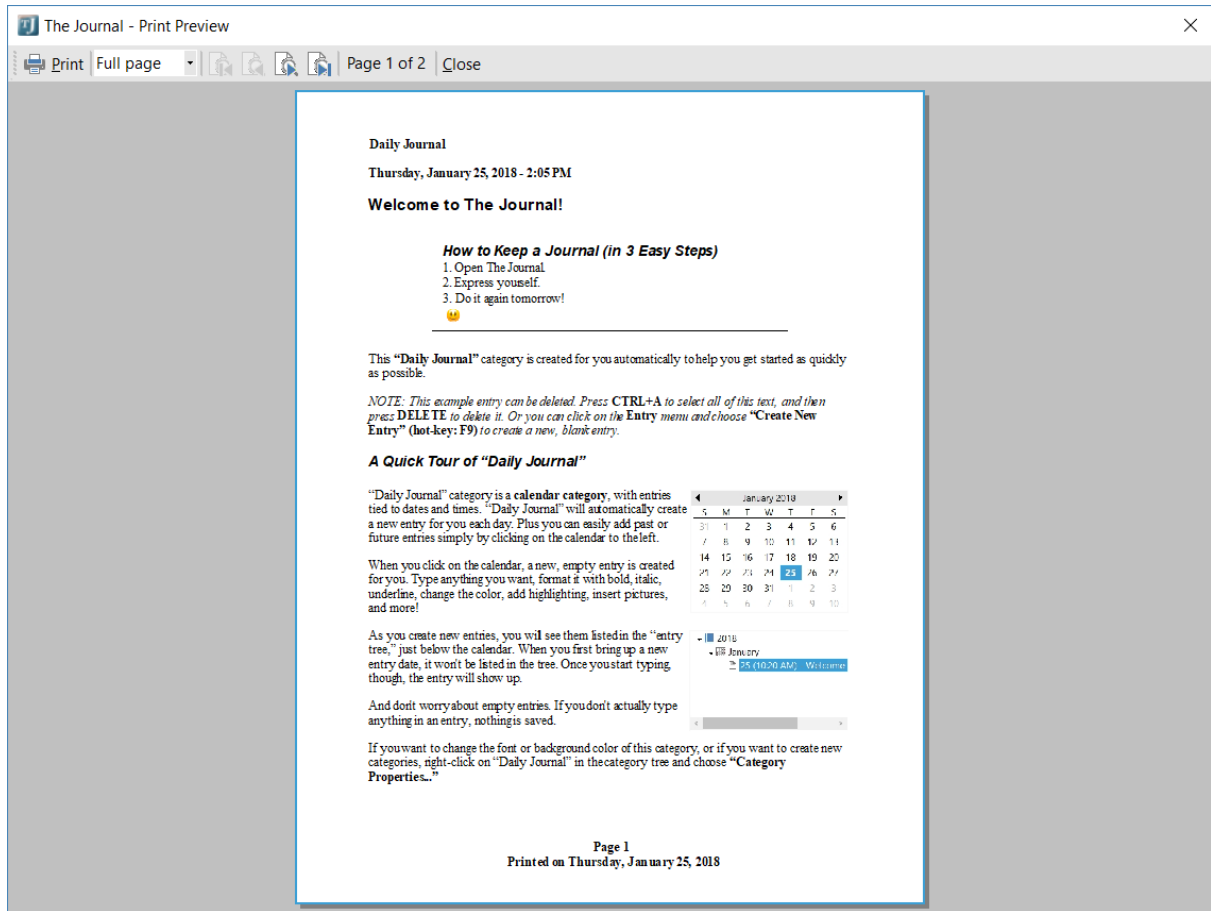
To print a single entry, bring up that entry. Then click on the **File** menu and choose **Print** (or press **Ctrl+P**).

With **"Active Entry"** selected, click on **"Print"**. That will print the currently selected entry.





Want to review the entry before you print? Click on **"Preview"**.



You can also print multiple entries, either from the same category or multiple categories. To do that, click on **"These Categories/Entries"** and then select the categories and/or entries that you want to print. Then click **"Print"**.

For more information, see [Printing](#).

To learn more about headers and footers, see [Printing Headers and Footers](#) and [User Preferences: Printing](#).

### 3.2.2 Inserting Images and Media in Entries

Your entries aren't limited to just text. You can insert digital photos, clip art, and even media like audio and video.

#### Inserting Images

To insert almost any kind of image in your entries:

- digital photos,
- clip art,
- any image of type JPG, PNG, BMP or GIF.

Click on this icon on the toolbar:



Or click on the **Insert** menu, and choose **"Insert Image..."**

You can also drag images from Windows Explorer and drop them into your entry.

By default, inserted images are positioned relative to the base line of the current entry text. You can change this default, for example to be to the left of your entry text, in [User Preferences: Editor Image Options](#).

## Inserting Media

You can also insert most types of audio and video files into your entries:

- audio - wma, wav, mp3, mid, midi, ra, ram
- video - wmv, mpg, mpeg, avi, mov, rm

Click on this icon on the toolbar:



Or click on the **Insert** menu, and choose **"Insert Media File (Audio/Video)..."**

You can also drag images from Windows Explorer and drop them into your entry.

An attached audio file shows this icon:



An attached video file shows this icon:



NOTE: Some media files are very large. Media files larger than 10 MB will cause your entries to load and save slower. Media files larger than 50 MB may not perform well when stored in The Journal.

Also note: The Journal relies on Windows for media file playback. If you are using Windows XP, it's possible that not all types of media file listed above will play.

### 3.2.3 Other Entry-Related Topics

Besides printing and inserting images, you can also:

- [post your entries to a blog](#);
- [insert tables](#);
- [use images as backgrounds for your entries](#);
- [link entries together like a Wiki](#);
- [tag your entries with topics](#);
- [and more!](#)

These topics are covered in detail in [The Journal Reference](#) section of this online help.

### 3.3 Using Categories

The Journal's categories provide a powerful tool for organizing your journaling, notes or other writing projects.

The "Daily Journal" and "Notebook categories" are created for you automatically, but you are not limited to just those. You can have as many or as few categories as you want.

The Journal supports two kinds of category: [calendar](#) and [loose-leaf](#).

#### Calendar Categories

[Calendar categories](#) can have entries for an hour, a day, a week, a month, a year--even for decades and centuries. The "Daily Journal" category created for you automatically is a calendar category that creates a new entry for you every day.

Calendar categories automatically organize your entries for you into days, weeks, months, and years. You can also view summaries of your entries in a monthly calendar, or a horizontal yearly calendar.

You can create an entry for any date: past, present or future. Any date, as far back or as far forward as you want to go.

Don't worry about empty entries: The Journal doesn't store empty calendar entries.

Further, calendar categories can have loose-leaf sub-entries, just like a loose-leaf category.

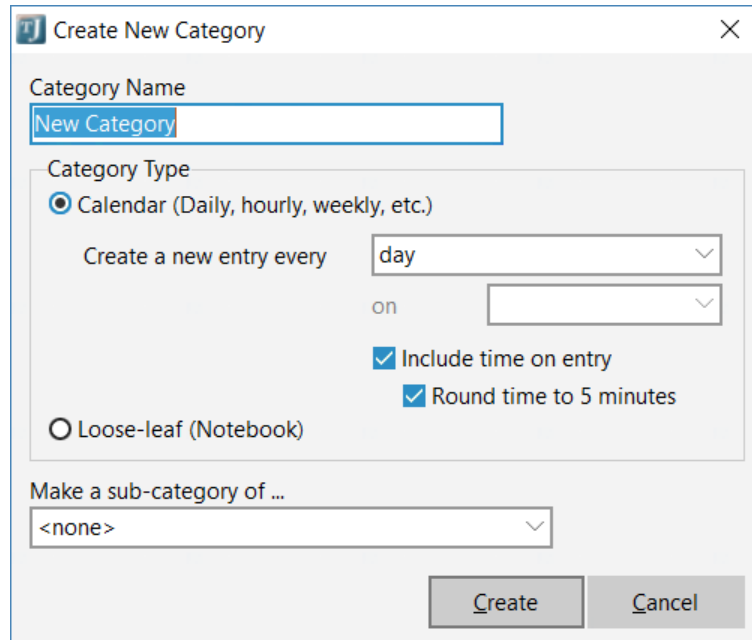
#### Loose-leaf Categories

[Loose-leaf](#) categories are a collection of entries that are not tied to a particular date (as they are in [calendar categories](#)).

Entries in a loose-leaf category are named documents, arranged by you, just like a loose-leaf notebook. Loose-leaf category entries can be arranged in any order (just click-and-drag in the entry tree), and entries can have sub-entries (which can have sub-entries, which can have sub-entries, and so on).

#### 3.3.1 Creating a New Category

To create a new category, click on the **Category** menu and choose "**Create New Category...**"



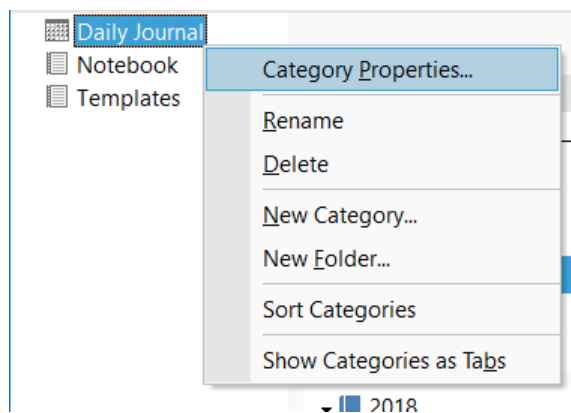
The "Create New Category" dialog box is shown. It has a title bar with a close button. The "Category Name" field contains "New Category". The "Category Type" section has two radio buttons: "Calendar (Daily, hourly, weekly, etc.)" (selected) and "Loose-leaf (Notebook)". Under the "Calendar" type, there are two dropdown menus: "Create a new entry every" (set to "day") and "on" (empty). There are two checked checkboxes: "Include time on entry" and "Round time to 5 minutes". The "Make a sub-category of ..." dropdown is set to "<none>". At the bottom right are "Create" and "Cancel" buttons.

Enter the name of the category you would like, then choose whether you want a [calendar category](#) or a [loose-leaf category](#). If you choose a calendar category, you will then have to specify how often you want the category to create new entries.

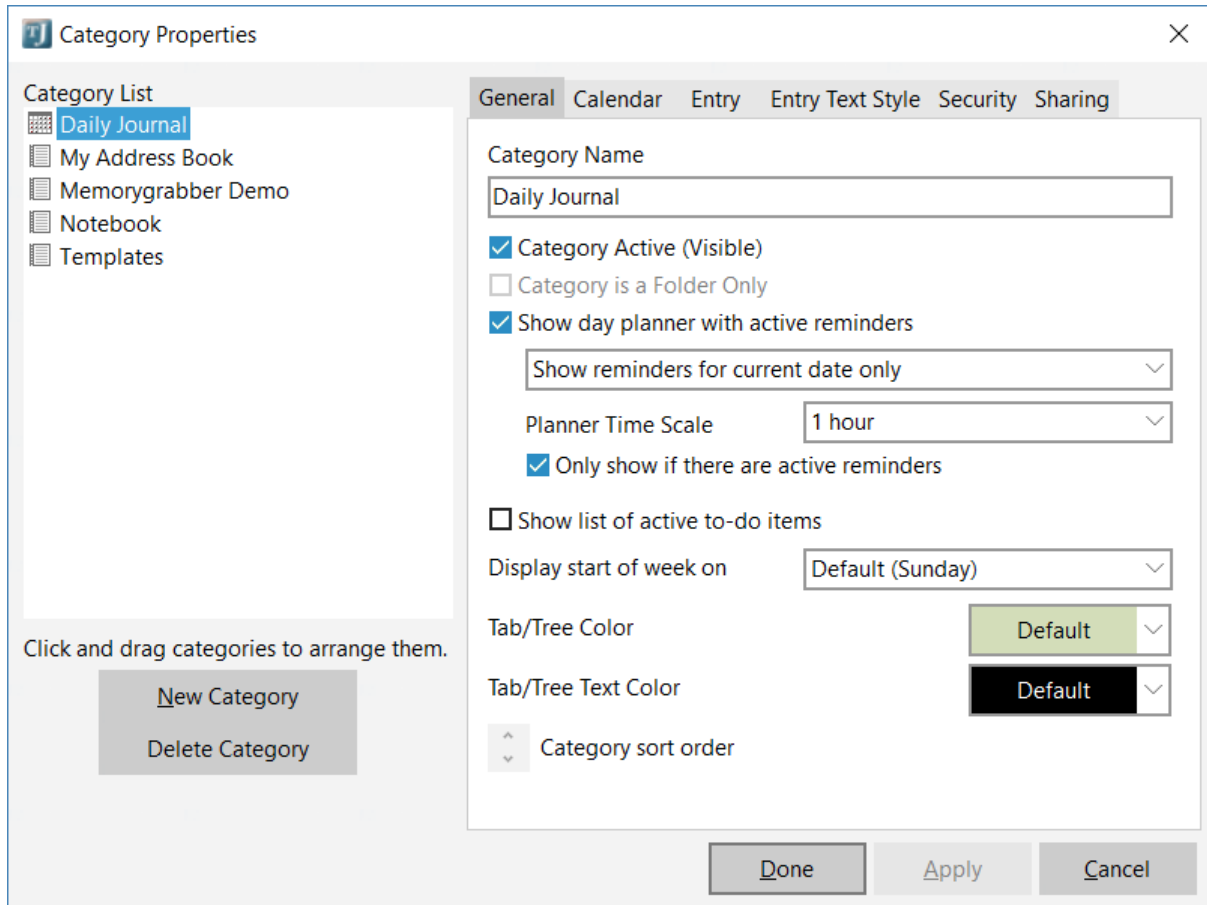
When you click "Create", the new category is added to your collection of category tabs.

### 3.3.2 Editing Categories

To edit a category, right-click on the category in the tree (or on its tab) and choose **"Category Properties..."**



Or you can click on the **Category** menu and choose **"Category Properties..."**



You can edit the name of your category, its order in the tabs, even whether its tab is visible or not and a whole lot more.

See [Category Properties](#) for more information.

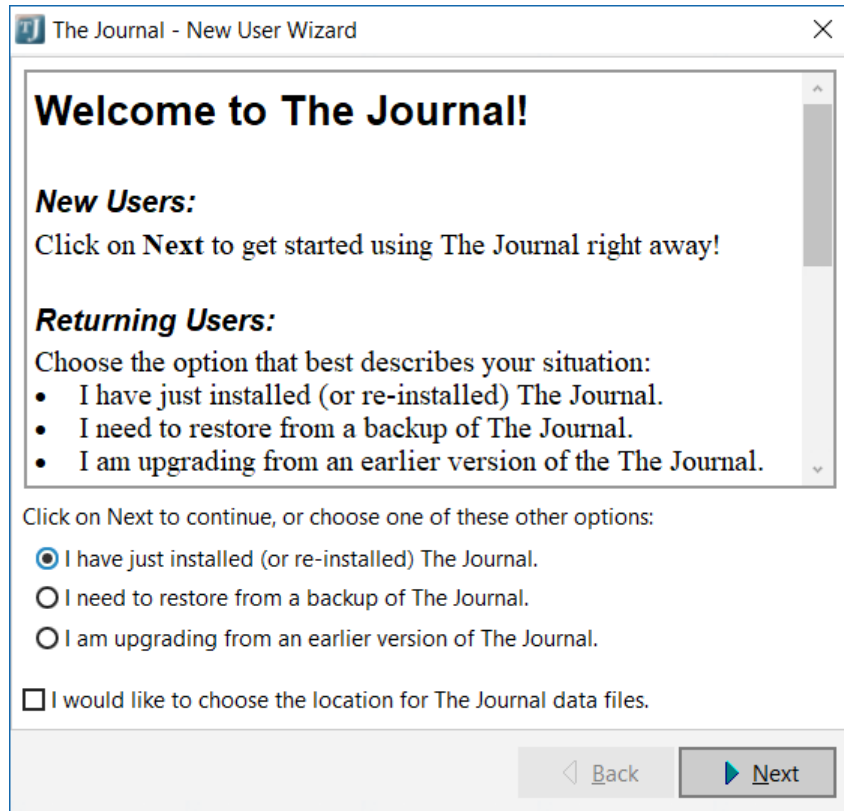
### 3.4 Creating Additional Logins

When you first started The Journal, you had to [create your first login name](#).

You can have, however, as many logins as you want: one for each project (for even more separation than categories), one for each family member, one for work and one for home, and so on. Each login can have its own password.

#### Create a New User

Click on the **File** menu and choose "**Create New User...**"



Every user must have a unique **User Name**. Every user must also have a password, or choose to have no password (a blank password).

Once you click **Next**, and then **Finish**, the user will be created within the currently active [Journal Volume](#).

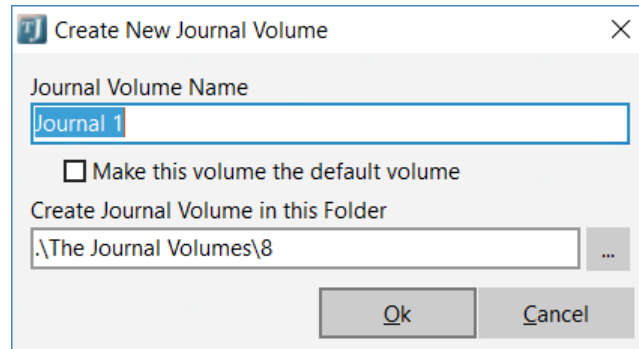
### 3.5 Creating Additional Journal Volumes

When you first started The Journal, The Journal automatically [created your first Journal Volume](#).

Like entries, categories and user logins, though, you can have as many Journal Volumes as you want. Each Journal Volume is completely separate from every other.

#### Creating a New Journal Volume

Click on the **File** menu, find the **Journal Volume** sub-menu, and choose "**Create New Journal Volume...**"



Every Journal Volume must have a unique name. This name is used to create a sub-folder for that Journal Volume.

NOTE: It is *not* recommended that you change the base Journal Volume folder (displayed under **Create Journal Volume in this Folder**).

Once you click **OK**, the Journal Volume is created.

The first time you open a Journal Volume, you will be prompted to create the first login name for that Journal Volume.

## 3.6 Database Maintenance

The Journal's entry database has proven very stable over the years, but it is always a good idea to make regular backups.

The Journal automatically prompts you to make a backup once a week (every 7 days). If you would like to backup more or less frequently, you can set this using the [Backup Settings](#).

### How do I backup The Journal?

1. Click on the **File** menu, find the **Maintenance** sub-menu, and choose "**Backup The Journal...**"
2. Check to select the Journal Volumes you want to backup.
3. Click on "**Start Backup**".

See [Backup Settings](#) for more information.

### How do I copy my backup file to another location?

Your Journal backup files can be automatically copied to another folder on your hard drive, to a network folder, to an external hard drive, or even offsite to an FTP server.

1. Click on the **File** menu, find the **Maintenance** sub-menu, and choose "**Backup Settings...**"
2. Under "**Copy backup archive to these locations**", add the folder(s) or FTP server you would like your backup copied to.

For more information see [Backup Settings](#).



## Frequently Asked Questions (FAQ)

## 4 Frequently Asked Questions (FAQ)

### Entries

[How do I import my entries from Evernote, Penzu, Diaro, or WordPress?](#)

[How can I import my entries from another diary or journal program?](#)

[How do I insert images in my entries?](#)

[Can I insert digital photos in my entries?](#)

[How do I wrap text around pictures in my entries?](#)

[How can I use tables in my entries?](#)

[How do I make my tables look like those in MS Word/WordPerfect/Etc?](#)

[How do I use topics in my entries?](#)

[How do I lock my entries so they can't be edited?](#)

[How do I post my entries to a blog?](#)

[How do I use templates in my entries?](#)

[How do I have a template automatically inserted in my entries?](#)

[How can I create my own templates?](#)

[Why can't I edit my past entries?](#)

[How do I create loose-leaf entries in my calendar category?](#)

[How many entries can The Journal hold?](#)

[How do I get rid of the time on my entries?](#)

### Printing

[How do I set the printer margins?](#)

### Categories

[What is a "category"?](#)

[What is a "calendar category"?](#)

[What is a "loose-leaf category"?](#)

[How do I set a category's default font?](#)

[How do I create a new category?](#)

[How do I delete a category?](#)

[How do I see how many entries are in a category?](#)

### User Interface

[I lost my password. How do I reset my password?](#)

[How can I customize the look of The Journal \(change the skin\)?](#)

[How do I customize the toolbars?](#)

[What is the hot-key \(keyboard shortcut\) for...?](#)

[Can I use voice-recognition software with The Journal?](#)

### Journal Volumes

[What is a Journal Volume?](#)

[How do I synchronize 2 Journal Volumes?](#)

[How do I move The Journal to a new computer?](#)

[How do I use The Journal on a Network?](#)

[What is the size limit on a Journal Volume?](#)

### Export/Import

[How can I import my entries from another diary or journal program?](#)

[How do I synchronize 2 installations of The Journal?](#)

### Database Maintenance

[How do I backup The Journal?](#)

[How do I copy my backup file to another location?](#)

[How do I restore from a backup?](#)  
[How do I see what is in my backup file?](#)  
[How do I restore just one category from a backup file?](#)

### **Security**

[How do I set/change my password?](#)  
[How do I get rid of my password?](#)  
[What is Extended Security?](#)  
[What kind of encryption does The Journal use?](#)

### **Upgrading**

[Will The Journal 8 upgrade my categories and entries from The Journal 6 \(or earlier\)?](#)  
[I am a registered user of The Journal 6 \(or earlier\). What is the upgrade price for The Journal 8?](#)

### **Glossary**

Your question not here? Feel free to ask! Click here to email [DavidRM Software](#).

## **4.1 FAQ: Entries**

### **How can I import my entries from another diary or journal program?**

[How do I insert images in my entries?](#)  
[Can I insert digital photos in my entries?](#)  
[How do I wrap text around pictures in my entries?](#)  
[How can I use tables in my entries?](#)  
[How do I make my tables look like those in MS Word/WordPerfect/Etc?](#)  
[How do I use topics in my entries?](#)  
[How do I lock my entries so they can't be edited?](#)  
[How do I post my entries to a blog?](#)  
[How do I use templates in my entries?](#)  
[How do I have a template automatically inserted in my entries?](#)  
[How can I create my own templates?](#)  
[Why can't I edit my past entries?](#)  
[How do I create loose-leaf entries in my calendar category?](#)  
[How many entries can The Journal hold?](#)  
[How do I get rid of the time on my entries?](#)

### **How do I insert images in my entries?**

Click on this icon on the toolbar:



Or click on the **Insert** menu, and choose "**Insert Image...**"

You can also drag-and-drop images into your entry using Windows Explorer.

By default, inserted images are positioned relative to the base line of the current entry text. You can change this default, for example to be to the left of your entry text, in [User Preferences: Editor Image Options](#).

Also see: [Using Images in Entries](#) and [How do I wrap text around pictures in my entries?](#)

### Can I insert digital photos in my entries?

Yes. You can insert just about any kind of image into The Journal, including digital photos (which are most often compressed JPEG images: \*.JPG).

Keep in mind, however, that digital photos larger than 3-4 megapixels (MP) may take a noticeable amount of time to save and load. The more photos in the entry, the longer it will take to load. So you may want to crop and/or reduce digital photos of 6+ MP before inserting them. Feel free to experiment and see what works best for you.

The Journal's [Automatic Image Resizing](#) feature can help with inserting digital photos into entries.

### How do I wrap text around pictures in my entries?

1. First, you insert the image, picture or digital photo as described above.
2. Click on the image to select it.
3. Right-click the image and open the "Image" sub-menu.
4. Choose either "Wrap Text on Right" or "Wrap Text on Left".

### How can I use tables in my entries?

To insert a table, click on this icon on the toolbar:



Or click on the **Insert** and choose "Insert Table..."

See [Using Tables](#).

### How do I make my tables look like those in MS Word/WordPerfect/Etc?

You can give your tables the single-black-line border used in most word processors by adjusting the cell spacing and turning off the table's border.

1. Select the table.
2. Click on the **Table** menu and choose "Table Properties..."
3. Click on **More...** (next to Cell Spacing).
4. Un-check **Equal Values**.
5. Change the **Horizontal** and **Vertical** values for **Between Cells** to: -1
6. Change the **Horizontal** and **Vertical** values for **From Table Border to Cells** to: 0
7. Click on OK.
8. Click on **Table Border...**

9. Under **Border Type** click on **None**.

10. Click on OK.

11. Click on OK.

### How do I use topics in my entries?

See [Using Topics](#).

### How do I lock my entries so they can't be edited?

You can make any entry "read only", to prevent changes to that entry.

1. Select the entry you want to lock.

2. Click on the **Entry** menu and un-check "**Lock/Unlock Entry**" (hot-key: F4).

You will see "Locked" displayed on the status bar below the entry.

You can edit the entry again by repeating that procedure. F4 toggles locked/unlocked status.

You can make all past entries in a calendar category locked automatically by checking the option in the [Calendar tab](#) of the [Category Properties](#).

### How do I post my entries to a blog?

See [Using a Blog](#).

### How do I use templates in my entries?

To insert a template in an entry:

1. Click on the **Insert** menu, and bring up the "**Insert Template**" sub-menu.

2. Choose the template to insert, and the text from that template will be inserted in your entry.

### How do I have a template automatically inserted in my entries?

1. Right-click on the category tab and choose **Category Properties...**

2. Bring up the **Entry** tab.

3. Select the **Default Entry Template** from the available drop down list of templates.

The selected [template](#) will be inserted into new entries. For [calendar categories](#), this template will be inserted into new entries for the current day. For [loose-leaf categories](#), the template will be inserted into all newly created entries.

### How can I create my own templates?

See [Creating Simple Templates](#) and [Creating Enhanced Templates](#).

### Why can't I edit my past entries?

In your category, past entries may be set to be locked. You can override this by clicking on the **Entry** menu and choosing "**Lock/Unlock Entry**" (or pressing the hot-key: F4).

You can also change the category setting so that all past entries edit-able:

1. Click on the **Category** menu and choose "**Category Properties...**"
2. Bring up the **Calendar** tab.
3. Un-check the option: "**Automatically lock past entries**"

### How do I create loose-leaf entries in my calendar category?

To create a sub-entry of a calendar entry (or a loose-leaf entry): Press **F10**

To create a new, root-level loose-leaf entry: Press **Shift+F9**

### How many entries can The Journal hold?

You can have a maximum of just over 2 billion entries in a Journal Volume.

### How do I get rid of the time on my entries?

By default, your new entries are "stamped" with the current time. If you would like to turn that off:

1. Right-click on the category in the list (or the category tab) and choose **Category Properties...**
2. Bring up the **Calendar** tab.
3. Un-check the option "**Include time in entry**".

## 4.2 FAQ: Printing

### How do I set the printer margins?

To set the printing margins:

1. On the **User** menu, click on "**Preferences...**"
2. Bring up the **Printing** tab.
3. Click on "**Edit Default Page Setup**".

4. There you can set the margins to how you want them, and click "OK" when you're done.

Those settings will be used every time you print, unless you override them at the category level.

## 4.3 FAQ: Categories

[What is a "category"?](#)

[What is a "calendar category"?](#)

[What is a "loose-leaf category"?](#)

[How do I set a category's default font?](#)

[How do I create a new category?](#)

[How do I delete a category?](#)

[How do I see how many entries are in a category?](#)

### What is a "category"?

[Categories](#) are a powerful way to organize your entries in The Journal. The Journal creates three categories for you automatically: "Daily Journal", "Notebook", and "Templates". You can create as many categories as you want.

"Daily Journal" is a **calendar category** which creates a new entry for you every day, and organizes those entries into months and years for you.

"Notebook" is a **loose-leaf category**. Entries in a loose-leaf category are not tied to a specific date. Instead, they are like named documents that you can arrange any way you want.

For more information, check out [Calendar Categories](#) and [Loose-leaf Categories](#).

### What is a "calendar category"?

[Calendar categories](#) can have entries for an hour, a day, a week, a month, a year--even for decades and centuries. The "Daily Journal" category created for you automatically is a calendar category that creates a new entry for you every day.

Calendar categories automatically organize your entries for you into days, weeks, months, and years. You can also view summaries of your entries in a monthly calendar, or a horizontal yearly calendar.

You can create an entry for any date: past, present or future. *Any* date, as far back or as far forward as you want to go.

Don't worry about empty entries: The Journal doesn't store empty calendar entries. When you log out, all empty entries are automatically purged.

### What is a "loose-leaf" category?

[Loose-leaf](#) categories are a collection of entries that are not tied to a particular date (as they are in [calendar categories](#)). Instead, entries in a loose-leaf category are named documents, arranged by you, just like a loose-leaf notebook.

Loose-leaf category entries can be arranged in any order (just click-and-drag), and entries can have sub-entries (which can have sub-entries, which can have sub-entries, ...).

### How do I set a category's default font?

You can use any Windows font (TrueType or Type-1) for your entries.

To set the default font used by a category:

1. Click on the **Format** menu and choose "**Change Default Font for [category name]**".

If you want to change the default font for *all* categories, you need to change your user default font:

1. Click on the **User** menu and choose "**Change User Default Font**".

### How do I create a new category?

1. Click on the **Category** menu and choose "**Create New Category...**"
2. Choose a name for your category (example: "Dreams").
3. Pick a category type, [Calendar](#) or [Loose-leaf](#).
4. If you are creating a calendar category, you will need to choose how often you want a new entry:
  - Every 1-12 hours,
  - Every day,
  - Every week (on a particular weekday),
  - Every month (on a particular day), or
  - Every year, decade, or century (if you're writing a history)
5. If you would like the new category to be a sub-category, choose the category that the new category will be under.

When you click on "Create", your new category will be created and you will be able to click on its tab and start making entries immediately.

Learn more about The Journal's categories here: [Categories](#)

### How do I delete a category?

1. Right-click on the category tab, and choose "**Category Properties...**"
2. Select the category to delete from the list of categories.
3. Click on "**Delete Category**".

NOTE: Deleting a category also deletes all of the entries in that category, as well as any sub-categories (and their entries). *Deleting a category cannot be undone*. You would need to [restore from a backup](#) to recover a deleted category.

### How do I see how many entries are in a category?

Click on the **Category** menu and choose "**Category Statistics...**"



## 4.4 FAQ: User Interface

### [I lost my password. How do I reset my password?](#)

[How can I customize the look of The Journal \(change the skin\)?](#)

[How do I customize the toolbars?](#)

[What is the hot-key \(keyboard shortcut\) for...?](#)

[Can I use voice-recognition software with The Journal?](#)

### **I lost my password. How do I reset my password?**

Most lost user passwords and category passwords can be reset.

[Email DavidRM Software and request a password reset code.](#)

You will be sent a password reset code and instructions for how to use it.

NOTE: Users who have activated [Extended Security](#) cannot have their passwords reset. That is one of the features of Extended Security.

### **How can I customize the look of The Journal (change the theme)?**

There are a lot themes for you to choose from, which you can easily change as your mood or style takes you.

Click on the **View** menu and choose "**Change Theme...**"

You can also change the them--or turn *off* themes--of The Journal in User Preferences (on the User menu), on the "**Global**" tab, "**Theme**" sub-tab.

### **How do I customize the toolbars?**

Right-click on the menu or toolbar that you want to customize, and choose **Customize**. This will open up a form which contains all available menu and toolbar commands.

Bring up the **Commands** tab.

Click on the commands you want and drag-and-drop them on the menu or toolbar where you want them to appear.

In addition, all toolbars, as well as the main menu, can be undocked and be floating at any position on your screen. Mouse over the far left of each toolbar until the four directional cursor appears, then left-click and drag the toolbar to the position you'd prefer.

### **What is the hot-key (keyboard shortcut) for...?**

All hot-keys are listed here: [Keyboard Shortcuts](#)

### **Can I use voice-recognition software with The Journal?**

Yes, The Journal can be used with most voice-recognition software (VRS).

When you use VRS with The Journal, it's recommended that you turn off a couple of features:

- "Check spelling as you type"
- "Correct spelling errors as you type"

Both of these features can be turned off on "Spell Checker" tab of "User Preferences" (on the **User** menu).

## 4.5 FAQ: Journal Volumes

[What is a Journal Volume?](#)

[How do I synchronize 2 Journal Volumes?](#)

[How do I move The Journal to a new computer?](#)

[How do I use The Journal on a Network?](#)

[What is the size limit on a Journal Volume?](#)

### What is a Journal Volume?

A Journal Volume is an "entry database" for The Journal. A Journal Volume can contain one or more user logins and all of their categories and entries.

Journal Volumes can be placed on any available hard drive, internal or external or network attached, or even removable thumb drives. Each Journal Volume must have a unique name.

Most users of The Journal will only need a single Journal Volume.

See [Journal Volumes](#) for more information.

### How do I synchronize 2 Journal Volumes?

It is possible to keep entries across multiple Journal Volumes "in sync" several ways:

- Using a backup file created by The Journal.
- Using an export file from The Journal.
- Using the Journal Volume folder on an external hard drive.

See the [Export/Import Overview](#) and [Synchronizing The Journal](#) for more information.

### How do I move The Journal to a new computer?

1. Create a backup of your Journal Volume(s) (**File** menu, **Maintenance** sub-menu, **Backup The Journal...**).
2. Download and install The Journal on your new computer.
3. Copy the backup file(s) you created in #1 to your new computer.
4. Run The Journal on your new computer. In the **New User Wizard**, check the option "**I need to Restore from a Backup of The Journal**" and click on "**Next**".
5. Browse to select the backup file.

6. Click on **"Restore"**. You will be prompted to create the Journal Volumes you need.

See also: [How do I restore from a backup?](#)

### How do I use The Journal on a Network?

The Journal can have its Journal Volume(s) on a shared or network folder, allowing multiple users to access those Journal Volume(s) at the same time. To do this, though, The Journal must be installed properly.

1. When you install The Journal, on the **"Select Additional Tasks"** page of the install wizard, you need to check this option: **"The Journal's database will be in a shared or network folder"**
2. You will be prompted to specify the shared/network folder to use.
3. You will have to do this on each of the computers or workstations that will be using The Journal over the network.
4. If the users will be accessing or updating the same categories and entries simultaneously: Once you have The Journal installed, you'll want to have set categories to use the "Lock Entries on Edit" option (on the ["Sharing"](#) tab of [Category Properties](#)).

### What is the size limit on a Journal Volume?

The maximum size of a Journal Volume is 30 TB (terabytes) on Windows.

NOTE: If you are running The Journal under a Windows emulator, the maximum size of the Journal Volume will be limited by the host operating system (e.g., 2 GB under Wine on Linux).

## 4.6 FAQ: Export/Import

[How do I import my entries from Evernote, Penzu, Diaro, or WordPress?](#)

[How can I import my entries from another diary or journal program?](#)

[How do I synchronize 2 installations of The Journal?](#)

### How do I import my entries from Evernote, Penzu, Diaro, or WordPress?

The Journal supports importing from a variety of other software products, including Evernote, Penzu, Diaro, and WordPress. This same process can be used for any software products that can export to the ATOM publishing format.

1. Export the entries from the other software to a file.
2. In The Journal, click on the **File** menu, **Import** sub-menu, and choose **"Import Entries..."**
3. Browse to select the file you exported in #1.
4. Do the import.

You don't have to worry about importing the same entries more than once. The Journal detects this, and checks the entries. If the entries are identical, nothing happens. If the current entry and the imported entry are different, however, you will be prompted to import the new entry, keep the current entry, or keep both.

Diaro NOTE: If possible, point the import to the folder with the Diaro xml file \*and\* the "Media" folder (with "Photo" sub-folder). That will allow The Journal to import your photos as well as your text entries.

### How can I import my entries from another diary or journal program?

The Journal supports batch entry import, which makes it relatively simple to import entries from other diary or journal programs.

1. Create a temporary folder on your hard drive.
2. Export your entries from the other software into individual text (.txt), rich text (.rtf), or HTML (.htm;.html) files. Export to the temporary folder you created in #1. If the entries are for a particular day, make sure the date is used in the name of the exported file. The best date format will use a 4-digit year, a 2-digit month, and a 2-digit day.

**Example:**

1993-10-05.rtf (entry for 5 October, 1993)

3. Once you have the entries exported, start The Journal. On the **File** menu, **Import** sub-menu, choose **"Batch Entry Import..."** to import the entries into The Journal.
4. Choose the option "Each in a separate file", and click on "Next".
5. Choose the category you want to import the entries into (like "Daily Journal").
6. Browse to the temporary folder where your exported entries are.
7. Set the "Specify Date Format" to match how the export named your entries.

**Example:**

yyyy-mm-dd.rtf

Then do the import.

See [Importing Entries from Other Journal Software](#) and [Batch Entry Import](#) for more information.

### How do I synchronize 2 installations of The Journal?

It is possible to keep entries across multiple Journal Volumes "in sync" several ways:

- Using a backup file created by The Journal.
- Using an export file from The Journal.
- Using the Journal Volume folder on an external hard drive.

See the [Export/Import Overview](#) and [Synchronizing The Journal](#) for more information.

## 4.7 FAQ: Database Maintenance

[How do I backup The Journal?](#)

[How do I copy my backup file to another location?](#)

[How do I restore from a backup?](#)

[How do I see what is in my backup file?](#)

[How do I restore just one category from a backup file?](#)

## How do I backup The Journal?

1. Click on the **File** menu, find the **Maintenance** sub-menu, and choose "**Backup The Journal...**"
2. Check to select the Journal Volumes you want to backup.
3. Click on "**Start Backup**".

See [User Preferences: Backup/Restore](#) for more information.

## How do I copy my backup file to another location?

Your Journal backup files can be automatically copied to another folder on your hard drive, to a network folder, to an external hard drive, or even offsite to an FTP server.

1. Click on the **File** menu, find the **Maintenance** sub-menu, and choose "**Backup Settings...**"
2. Under "**Copy backup archive to these locations**", add the folder(s) or FTP server you would like your backup copied to.

See [User Preferences: Backup/Restore](#) for more information.

## How do I restore from a backup?

1. Click on the **File** menu, find the **Maintenance** sub-menu, and choose "**Restore From Backup...**"
2. Browse to select your backup file.
3. When the backup file is opened, the Journal Volume name will be displayed, as well as the date the backup file was created.
4. If more than one Journal Volume is listed, select the Journal Volume to restore from the list.
6. Click on "**Restore Journal Volume**".
- 7.a. If the Journal Volume doesn't exist in The Journal, you will be asked if you want to create the Journal Volume.
- 7.b. If a Journal Volume with the same name *does* exist, you will be asked to confirm overwriting the current Journal Volume.
- 7.c. Otherwise, select the Journal Volume to restore into.

NOTE: Everything that is in the Journal Volume you select *will* be overwritten by the information in the backup. So select the Journal Volume *\*very\** carefully.

Once the restore is finished, you can open the Journal Volume and log in.

### How do I see what is in my backup file?

1. On the **File** menu, find the **Maintenance** sub-menu, and choose "**Restore from Backup...**". Browse to select your backup file.
2. When the backup file is opened, the Journal Volume name will be displayed, as well as the date the backup file was created.
3. Click on "**Create New Journal Volume**" to create a new, temporary Journal Volume that you can restore into.
4. Click on "**Restore Journal Volume**". This will restore the backup file into the newly create Journal Volume.

Then you can open the new Journal Volume, log in and review what it contained.

When you need to delete the temporary Journal Volume:

5. Click on the **File** menu, **Journal Volume** sub-menu and choose "**Delete Journal Volume...**"
6. Select the Journal Volume you created in #3 above, and then click on "**Delete**".

### How do I restore just one category from a backup file?

1. Click on the **File** menu, **Import** sub-menu and choose "**Sync from Backup File...**"
2. Browse to select the backup file.
3. If you're prompted for the user login password, enter that.
4. Under "What would you like to synchronize", un-check all the options except "**Categories & Entries**". Then click on "Next".
5. Click on "**Clear All**", then check the category (on the left side) that you want to restore. Then click on Next.
6. There will not be any entry conflicts, so click on "Next" again.
7. Click on "**Sync**".

And you're done.

## 4.8 FAQ: Security

[How do I set/change my password?](#)

[How do I get rid of my password?](#)

[What is Extended Security?](#)

[What kind of encryption does The Journal use?](#)

### How do I set/change my password?

Click on the **User** menu and select "**Change User Password...**"

You will need to enter your current password (unless you have a blank password) to create a new password, and then confirm your new password.

### How do I get rid of my password?

If you do not want The Journal to prompt you for your password:

1. Click on the **User** menu and choose "**Auto-Login**".
2. Enter your password at the prompt to confirm auto-login.

You can turn off automatic login by clicking on the **User** menu and choose "Auto-Login" again.

### What is Extended Security?

Extended Security enhances The Journal's normal security by adding an additional layer of protection, and a couple of security-related options.

The Journal's "basic" security is quite good, more than most people will ever need. Extended Security builds on that to make The Journal as secure as possible.

See [Extended Security](#) for more information.

### What kind of encryption does The Journal use?

Encryption of entries uses the Twofish block cipher designed by Bruce Schneier.

See [Security Details](#) for more information.

## 4.9 FAQ: Upgrading

[Will The Journal 8 upgrade my categories and entries from The Journal 7 \(or earlier\)?  
I am a registered user of The Journal 7 \(or earlier\). What is the upgrade price for The Journal 8?](#)

### Will The Journal 8 upgrade my categories and entries from The Journal 7 (or earlier)?

Yes, The Journal 8 will upgrade your existing categories and entries from any past version of The Journal.

[Upgrading Your Journal Volumes from The Journal 7 \(or earlier\) \(Most Users\)](#)

[Upgrading Your Journal Volumes from The Journal 7 installed on a USB drive](#)

[Upgrading from a Backup File \(\\*.jbk or \\*.jbu\)](#)

See [Upgrading from The Journal 7, 6, 5, 4 or 3](#) or [Upgrading from The Journal 2.x](#) for more information.

**I am a registered user of The Journal 7 (or earlier). What is the upgrade price for The Journal 8?**

If you purchased The Journal 7 from 1 January 2018, up to the release of The Journal 8, you are eligible for a free upgrade. Email [DavidRM Software](#) to request your Registration Keys for The Journal 8. Include your full name (first + last), email address (or mailing address), and approximate date of purchase.

People who have purchased any previous version of The Journal are eligible for special upgrade pricing (\$29.99 US). To receive your The Journal 8 Upgrade Coupon Code, you must submit your full name (first + last), email address (or mailing address), and approximate date of purchase to [DavidRM Software](#).

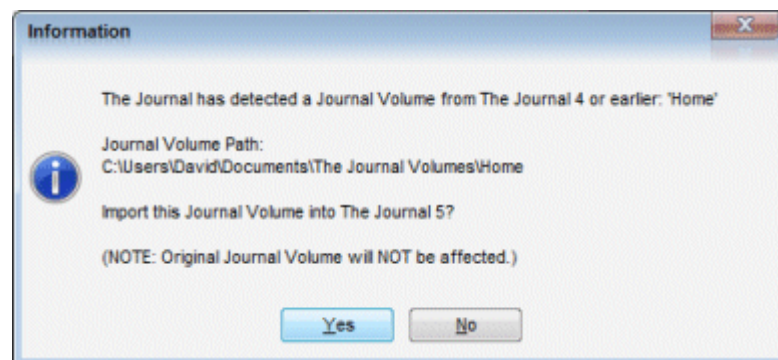
See [The Journal Pricing](#) for more information.

**4.9.1 Upgrading from The Journal 7, 6, 5, 4 or 3**

[Upgrading Your Journal Volumes from The Journal 6 \(or earlier\) \(Most Users\)](#)  
[Upgrading Your Journal Volumes from The Journal 6 installed on a USB drive](#)  
[Upgrading from a Backup File](#)

**Upgrading Your Journal Volumes from The Journal 6 (or earlier) (Most Users)**

If you have The Journal 6 (or TJ5 or TJ4 or TJ3) installed, then the first time you run The Journal 8 it will detect your existing Journal Volumes and offer to import them into The Journal 8.



Click on **Yes** to start the import.

The import process copies your TJ6/TJ5/TJ4/TJ3 Journal Volumes to a new location before upgrading them. *Your existing Journal Volumes will not be changed or modified in any way.*

The upgrade happens in 2 steps:

1. Database upgrade. This happens the first time you open an imported Journal Volume.
2. User upgrade. This happens the first time you log in with a user name.

If you have a lot of entries, the upgrade may take a few minutes.

**UPGRADE NOTES for The Journal 4 and The Journal 3:**

- A user's auto-login setting (no prompting for password) is not upgraded, so you will be prompted for your password. You can set auto-login again by clicking on the **User** menu and choosing **"Auto-Login"**.



- Categories that were set to "read only" lose that setting when upgraded. You can set the category to read only again in **Category Properties**, on the **Security** tab, check the option **"Category entries are Read Only (and no new entries)"**.

## Upgrading Your Journal Volumes from The Journal 6 installed on a USB drive

NOTE: You will need about 35 MB of space just to install The Journal 8, and then about twice as much free space as your TJ6 Journal Volume currently uses (it won't always need this much space; just during the import and upgrade).

First, install The Journal 8 to your USB drive.

Run The Journal 8.

You will be presented with the New User Wizard.

Check the option "I am upgrading from an earlier version of The Journal." Then click Next.

Browse \*into\* the folder for your TJ6 (or earlier) Journal Volume. Select any file in the folder and click on "Open".

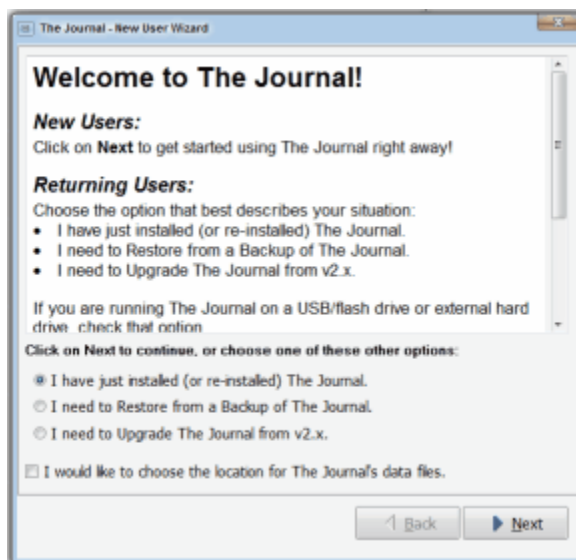
That will start the upgrade process. The Journal 8 will then copy the Journal Volume into your new Journal Volumes folder and upgrade it.

## Upgrading from a Backup

If you do not have The Journal 6 (or earlier) installed, but you do have a backup file (\*.jbackup, \*.JBK or \*.JBU) from The Journal 6 (or earlier), you can upgrade from that.

The first time you run The Journal 8, you will be shown the **"New User Wizard"**.

Click on **"I need to Restore from a Backup of The Journal"**, then click on **Next**.



You will then browse to select the backup file to restore from.

Once the restore has finished, The Journal 8 will ask you to confirm that you want the Journal Volume upgraded. Follow the on-screen instructions to upgrade the Journal Volume.

The upgrade happens in 2 steps:

1. Database upgrade. This happens the first time you open an imported Journal Volume.
2. User upgrade. This happens the first time you log in with a user name.

If you have a lot of entries, the upgrade may take a few minutes.

### Reverting to The Journal 6 (or earlier)

Should you decide not to stick with The Journal 8, you will want to do this:

1. Export all new/edited entries created or changed since you installed The Journal 8.
  - 1.a. Use Windows Explorer to create a temporary folder to export into.
  - 1.b. In The Journal 8, click on the **File** menu, **Export** sub-menu, **Export Entries as Document...**
  - 1.c. Click on the "**Export Options**" tab and make sure that the "**File Options**" is set to "**Create a file for each exported entry**".
  - 1.3. Select the entries you have created/changed in The Journal 8.
  - 1.3. Export these entries to **RTF** files into the folder you created.
2. Uninstall The Journal 8 using Windows Control Panel.
3. Run The Journal 6 (re-install if necessary). The Journal 6 should see your entries from before installing The Journal 7.
4. Import the entries exported from The Journal 8.
  - 4.a. In The Journal 6, click on the **File** menu, **Import** sub-menu, and choose **Batch Entry Import...**
  - 4.b. Browse to the folder you created in #1 (above) with your exported entries.
  - 4.c. Select the category to import the entries into.
  - 4.d. Select the **.RTF** files to import.

#### 4.9.2 Upgrading Add-on Packages

If you have purchased add-on packages for earlier versions of The Journal, such as MemoryGrabber and Writing Prompts 1, you can still use them in The Journal 8.

Any packages you are already using should be upgraded. If not, the easiest way to get the packages into The Journal 8 is to run the add-on installation again:

1. Make sure The Journal is not running.
2. Run the installation program for the package. When asked for the folder to install into, change it from:  
**C:\Program Files\DavidRM Software\The Journal 7\Package\**

To:

**C:\Program Files\DavidRM Software\The Journal 8\Package\**

If you need to download the add-on installation program, email [DavidRM Software](mailto:DavidRM Software).

### 4.9.3 Upgrading from The Journal 2.x

The Journal 8 can upgrade users, categories, and entries created with any 2.x release.

If you already have The Journal 2.x installed, you can upgrade the entry database easily. Just point the upgrade process to the folder on your hard drive which contains the 2.x database. The 2.x database will be copied to a temporary location before the upgrade is processed to prevent any changes to it.

If you have a backup that was created with The Journal 2.x, you can also upgrade from that. The backup will be restored to a temporary database, which will then be upgraded.

**NOTE: The information below applies *only* to users, categories, and entries upgraded from The Journal 2.x.**

#### Upgrading Users

All user-specific settings are upgraded except for some display settings (like the size and position of The Journal). Settings for "Single User Mode", "Minimize to System Tray", and "Always on Top" are not upgraded.

Your password is unchanged from the upgrade. It is recommended that you change your password after upgrading.

If you use "Single User Mode" in The Journal 2.x, it is recommended that you turn it off before you upgrade so that you can be certain you still remember your password.

#### Upgrading Categories

All categories are upgraded, whether they are active or inactive.

"Daily" categories in The Journal 2.x are converted to [calendar](#) categories (daily).

"Non-Daily" categories are also converted to [calendar](#) categories (daily).

"Loose-leaf" categories in The Journal 2.x are converted to [loose-leaf](#) categories. The "tree structure" of entries is preserved, as is the sorting of entries.

Categories with passwords are upgraded, but the password protection is removed. So any password-protected categories will have to be given passwords again after the upgrade.

#### Upgrading Entries

All entries in The Journal 2.x are upgraded.

# The Journal Reference

## 5 The Journal Reference

This section includes detailed descriptions of all The Journal's features, and how to use them.

[Glossary](#)

[Blog Support](#)

[Categories](#)

[Database Maintenance](#)

[Entries](#)

[Export/Import & Syncing](#)

[Images & Media](#)

[Journal Volumes](#)

[Links](#)

[Printing](#)

[Reminders & Tasks](#)

[Security](#)

[Styles](#)

[Tables](#)

[Templates](#)

[Topics](#)

[User Interface](#)

[User Preferences](#)

### 5.1 Glossary

#### Auto-Login

The [auto-login](#) option automatically logs you in when you start The Journal. You can turn on auto-login by clicking on the **User** menu and checking "**Auto-Login**". You will be prompted for your password once more, but not again. You can turn off auto-login by clicking on the User menu and un-checking the "Auto-Login" option.

This option can also be set on the [Security](#) tab of [User Preferences](#).

#### Blog

Short for "Web log", a form of public diary usually posted on a Web site. The Journal allows you to post your entries to most blogs (WordPress, Blogger, and so on). See [Using a Blog](#) for more information.

#### Bookmark

A [bookmark](#) is a point in an entry that can be linked to. To insert a bookmark, click on the **Insert** menu and choose **Insert Bookmark...** You will be prompted for a name for the bookmark.

You can jump to any bookmark in any entry. Click on the **Go** menu, then open the "**Go to Bookmark**" sub-entry to see all of your bookmarks.

#### Calendar Charms

[Calendar Charms](#) are icons, or small graphic images, that can be assigned to entries. The entry's Calendar Charm is then displayed on the calendar and in the category's entry tree. Calendar Charms can also be inserted into entries, like clip art.

## Categories

[Categories](#) are a powerful way to organize your entries in The Journal. The Journal creates three categories for you automatically: "Daily Journal", "Notebook", and "Templates". Each category has its own entries, and you can easily switch back and forth. You can create as many categories as you want.

There are two types of category: [Calendar](#) and [Loose-leaf](#).

### Categories, Calendar

[Calendar categories](#) are often called "daily entry" categories. However, calendar categories can also be hourly, weekly, monthly even yearly. Calendar category entries are tied to a specific date (or range of dates) and optionally a specific time. You can make as many entries on a date and/or time as you would like.

### Categories, Loose-leaf

[Loose-leaf categories](#) are often called "notebook" categories. Entries in a loose-leaf category are not tied to any date. Instead, they are named documents (or external objects or images). Also, unlike calendar category entries which are always arranged by year, month, day and time, loose-leaf category entries can be arranged in "trees" of the user's choosing. An entry can have as many sub-entries as you want.

### Categories, Shared

A shared category is a category that can be accessed by each user that links to it (and provides the optional sharing password). All entries in the shared category are accessible. Categories can be shared "read only" or "full access".

## Day Planner

The day planner is your reference for all your active reminders, and can be set to display in any of your journal categories above the entry editor. You can display your reminders just for today and up to a week in advance.

## Entry (Entries)

[Entries](#), organized by category, are the core of The Journal. Entries can be [text "documents"](#), [external objects](#), or [images](#). Most categories use document entries, because they are the most flexible type of entry, but any type can be set as the default for the category.

### Entry, Document

[Document entries](#) are formatted text documents, much like word processor files. Text can be entered freely to any length. Any Windows font installed on your PC can be used to format the text. Document entries can also include images, media files, and even embedded files.

## Entry, External Object

[External object entries](#) are essentially Windows data files stored in (or linked from) The Journal. Double-clicking an external object entry will open the entry using the associated Windows application. If possible, the application will be "hosted" inside The Journal.

## Entry, Image

[Image entries](#) are graphic files (BMP, JPG, etc) that are stored in The Journal.

## Entry Tree

The "entry tree" is the list of entries below the small calendar. Calendar entries are arranged automatically by year, month, day and time. Loose-leaf entries are arranged however you want them (just click and drag to arrange loose-leaf entries).

## Exporting

Use The Journal's [export features](#) to make entries available to other software or to synchronize Journal Volumes.

## Importing

Bringing files created by other applications (including other journal software) into The Journal. See [Importing](#).

## Journal Volume

A [Journal Volume](#) is an "entry database" for The Journal. A Journal Volume can contain one or more user logins and all of their categories and entries. Each Journal Volume has its own folder on your hard drive (or USB device or network drive).

## Links

The Journal supports hypertext-style links in [document entries](#).

There are two types of link: [entry links](#) and [Internet links](#). Entry links are links to another entry in The Journal (or to a [bookmark](#) within an entry). Internet links are links to Web pages or email addresses.

If an entry is "read only", you can activate a link just clicking on it. If the entry is not "read only", however, you will need to hold down the **Ctrl** key and then click on the link.

## Links, Entry

[Entry links](#) are special hyperlinks within The Journal to allow jumping to another entry, or to a [bookmark](#) within an entry.

## Links, Internet

[Internet links](#) are links web page addresses, email addresses, and so on. You can also link to files on your hard drive.

## Media

Audio files and video files like .wav and .mpg are called "media files". You can embed media files in your entries, and play them back.

## Synchronizing

Keeping two installs of The Journal up-to-date with each other is known as synchronizing, or syncing. See [Synchronizing The Journal](#) for more information.

## Style

A [style](#) is a pre-defined text format. A style can set the font, change paragraph spacing and borders, and more. The Journal automatically creates a small collection of styles for you besides the default (or "Normal") style: Heading 1, Heading 2, Heading 3, and HTML Passthru (for blogs).

## Topic

[Topics](#) are another way to organize your entries. You can set a topic (e.g., "Feelings -> Happy") to the text of entry, either as you type it or afterward. You can set as many topics within an entry as you wish. You can also "tag" an entry with a topic. In that case, the topic applies to the whole entry, not just to a block of text. You can then [search entries with a topic or topics](#) and review them.

## 5.2 Blog Support

The Journal's blog support gives you the ability to post entire entries (or just selected portions of entries), both text and images, to public blogs--without sacrificing privacy and security. You choose what entries and information are posted to your blog, and keep sensitive and/or private information inside The Journal.

### Blogs Supported

- B2Evolution ([www.b2evolution.net](http://www.b2evolution.net))
- Blog-City ([www.blog-city.com](http://www.blog-city.com))
- Blogger ([www.blogger.com](http://www.blogger.com))
- CafeLog ([www.cafelog.com](http://www.cafelog.com))
- LiveJournal ([www.livejournal.com](http://www.livejournal.com))
- MovableType ([www.movabletype.org](http://www.movabletype.org))
- MSN Spaces ([spaces.msn.com](http://spaces.msn.com))



- Quick Blogcast (from GoDaddy)
- TypePad ([www.typepad.com](http://www.typepad.com))
- WordPress ([www.wordpress.org](http://www.wordpress.org) or [www.wordpress.com](http://www.wordpress.com))
- Custom: Blogger (blogs that support the Blogger API)
- Custom: LiveJournal (blogs that use the LiveJournal API/source code)
- Custom: MetaWeblog (blogs that support the MetaWeblog API)
- Custom: MovableType (blogs that support the MovableType API)

Support for more blogs will be added as users request them. So if you don't see your favorite, check [Setting Up a Custom Blog](#) or contact DavidRM Software ([support@davidrm.com](mailto:support@davidrm.com)).

#### [Using a Blog Blog Profile](#)

### 5.2.1 Using a Blog

Here are the steps to using a blog with The Journal:

#### 1. Create your Blog Account

First, you will need a blog account to post to. Many blog hosts, like [WordPress](#), [LiveJournal](#) and [Blogger](#), provide free accounts. You just have to sign up for one.

#### 2. Create a Blog Profile in The Journal

Next, you need to create a [blog profile](#) so The Journal knows how to post to your blog.

Click on the **Tools** menu, and choose **Blog Profiles...**

On the Blog Profiles form, click on Create New Blog Profile and enter the necessary information:

- Blog Tool (example: LiveJournal)
- Alias/User Name (example: DavidRM)
- And so on.

See [Blog Profile](#) for more information about setting up your blog profile.

In most cases, you can leave the rest of the blog profile settings as they are.

#### 3. Make an entry in The Journal

Bring up a blank entry and type up the text you want to post to your blog, just like you were making a normal entry in The Journal.

#### 4. Post the entry to your Blog

Select the text you want to post to your blog and right-click on it to bring up the editor's context menu. Open the **Post to Blog** sub-menu and select the blog profile to use.

You will be prompted for your password, and then the selected text will be posted to your blog.

That's all there is to it!

### 5.2.2 Blog Profile

#### Blog Tool

Identifies the type of blog (e.g.: LiveJournal). Each blog tool has its own way of posting new entries. Once set, the blog tool for a profile cannot be changed.

#### Alias

This is your alias/user name on the blog tool. This is required when logging into the blog to post an entry.

#### Blog API

**Host** - This is the host site of your blog (e.g.: www.livejournal.com). The Journal communicates with this site to post the entry to your blog.

**Page** - This is the page (e.g.: /interface/xmlrpc/) on the blog's host site which The Journal uses to post the entry to your blog.

**Port** - The port number (e.g.: 80) used to communicate with the host site. This number will be 80 in most cases.

**Timeout** - The timeout value specifies how many seconds to wait for the host site to respond before cancelling.

#### Proxy Settings

**Do not use a Proxy Server** - Use a direct connection (no proxy server) to the blog's host site.

**Use Internet Explorer Proxy Settings** - Use Internet Explorer's proxy settings to connect to the blog's host site.

**Use These Proxy Settings** - Specify your proxy server information yourself. You must enter both an Address and a Port. If necessary, you can also enter your proxy User Name and Password.

#### Export Settings

**No Formatting (Simple Text)** - Post entries to the blog as simple text, with no formatting.

**Force doublespace between paragraphs** - Force doublespacing (a blank line) between paragraphs. NOTE: This option is only available if No Formatting is selected.

**HTML Formatting** - Post entry to the blog, preserving text formatting with HTML. NOTE: Not all text formatting supported in The Journal is available in HTML.

**Use <BR> tag instead of <P> tag for paragraphs** - By default, the HTML exported by The Journal uses the <p> tag for paragraphs. If you would prefer that the export use the <br /> tag for paragraphs, check this option.

**Force a Leading Blank Line in Post** - If checked, a single blank will be inserted at the top of the post, followed by the content of the post. Specifically what happens is: all "white space" at the beginning of the post, if any, is removed, and a single blank line is inserted.

**Force a Trailing Blank Line in Post** - If checked, a single blank will be appended to the bottom of the post. Specifically what happens is: all "white space" at the end of the post, if any, is removed, and a single blank line is appended.

### Additional Settings

**Make blog posts private** - Post the entry to the blog as private, or not visible to other bloggers. Not supported by all blog types.

**Prompt for a title when posting** - Prompt for a subject/title for the blog post. Not supported by all blog types.

**Use first line of post for title** - If checked, the first line of your post will be used as the title, and removed from the body of the post. Not supported by all blog types.

**Save password for this profile** - Save the password for this blog profile so that you don't have to type it in every time. Un-check this option to clear the saved password and be prompted again.

**Always post to this blog** - If you can post to multiple blogs with this blog profile, you have the option of always posting to the same blog, to avoid being prompted over and over. Un-check this option to be prompted again.

#### 5.2.3 Setting Up a WordPress Blog

##### If you have a blog hosted by WordPress (blogname.wordpress.com):

1. **Blog Tool:** WordPress
2. **Alias/User name:** blogname
3. **Host:** blogname.wordpress.com
4. **Page:** /xmlrpc.php

##### If you are hosting your WordPress blog on your own server:

**Example 1:** www.blogname.com

1. **Blog Tool:** WordPress
2. **Alias/User name:** blogusername
3. **Host:** www.blogname.com
4. **Page:** /xmlrpc.php

**Example 2:** www.server.com/blogname

1. **Blog Tool:** WordPress
2. **Alias/User name:** blogusername
3. **Host:** www.server.com
4. **Page:** /blogname/xmlrpc.php

### Posting Entries with Images

NOTE: This only works if you are hosting WordPress on your own server.

If you want to post entries with images in them, you will need to some additional setup on the blog.

1. In the WordPress "dashboard", click on "Settings", and then bring up the "Miscellaneous Settings" page.
2. Set the "Store uploads in this folder" option.
3. Finally, make sure that the folder specified exists.

#### 5.2.4 Setting Up a Blogger (Google) Blog

1. **Blog Tool:** Blogger (Google)
2. **Alias/User name:** Your Gmail address (example: name@gmail.com)

The Blog API settings will be filled in for you automatically.

NOTE: If you have multiple blogs on Blogger, you will be prompted which one to post to when you do the "Post Entry to Blog".

#### 5.2.5 Setting Up a Custom Blog

Even if the blog site you use isn't listed in the Blog Profiles form, there's is still a good chance that The Journal will work for you.

### Gather the Necessary Blog Information

Check in your blog site's Help or FAQ (Frequently Asked Questions) section to find these bits of information:

1. **API supported** - Many blog sites support the Blogger API. The MetaWeblog is also popular. You need this information so you can choose the correct "Blog Tool" in your blog profile. If you cannot find this information, try "Custom: Blogger API".
2. **Host site** - The Journal communicates with the host site to post the entry to your blog. For many blog sites, this is the same as blog's home page (e.g., www.typepad.com).
3. **Page** - This is the page that is posted to on the host site.

The Host site and Page may be displayed as combined. Example: www.typepad.com/t/api/

In this case, you would separate the Host and Page like this:

Host: [www.typepad.com](http://www.typepad.com)  
Page: [/t/api/](#)

NOTE: The Page may require a trailing slash (/).

## Create Your Blog Profile

Once you have the above information, you can create your blog profile as described in [Using a Blog](#).

## 5.3 Categories

The Journal's categories provide a powerful tool for organizing your journaling, notes or other writing projects.

You can have as many categories as you want. Every category has its own collection of entries.

The Journal supports two kinds of category: [calendar](#) and [loose-leaf](#).

### Calendar Categories

[Calendar categories](#) can have entries for an hour, a day, a week, a month, a year--even for decades and centuries. The "Daily Journal" category created for you automatically is a calendar category that creates a new entry for you every day.

Calendar categories automatically organize your entries for you into days, weeks, months, and years. You can also view summaries of your entries in a monthly calendar, or a horizontal yearly calendar.

You can create an entry for any date: past, present or future. *Any* date, from 1 AD to 9899 AD.

Don't worry about empty entries: The Journal doesn't store empty calendar entries. They are purged when you log out or close The Journal.

Further, calendar categories can have loose-leaf entries, just like a loose-leaf category. These can be sub-entries or attachments of calendar entries, or stand-alone entries.

### Loose-leaf Categories

[Loose-leaf](#) categories are a collection of entries that are not tied to a particular date.

Entries in a loose-leaf category are named documents, arranged by you, just like a loose-leaf notebook or folder. Loose-leaf category entries can be arranged in any order (just click-and-drag in the entry tree), and entries can have sub-entries (which can have sub-entries, which can have sub-entries, and so on).

Loose-leaf entries can be sorted (forward and backward) by name, date create, date modified--or not sorted at all.

### 5.3.1 Calendar Categories

[Calendar categories](#) can have entries for an hour, a day, a week, a month, a year--even for decades and centuries. The "Daily Journal" category created for you automatically is a calendar category that creates a new entry for you every day.

Entries in a calendar category are always tied to a particular date (or date+time) or range of dates. Calendar categories automatically organize your entries for you into days, weeks, months, and years. You can also view summaries of your entries in a [monthly calendar](#), or a horizontal [yearly calendar](#).

You can create an entry for any date: past, present or future. Any date, from 1 AD to 9899 AD.

Don't worry about empty entries: The Journal doesn't store empty calendar entries.

Further, calendar categories can have loose-leaf entries, just like a loose-leaf category. Loose-leaf entries can be sub-entries of calendar entries, and the category can have its own loose-leaf entries that aren't sub-entries of calendar entries (just like a [loose-leaf category](#)).

See [Category Properties: Calendar](#) for more information.

### 5.3.1.1 Calendar Views

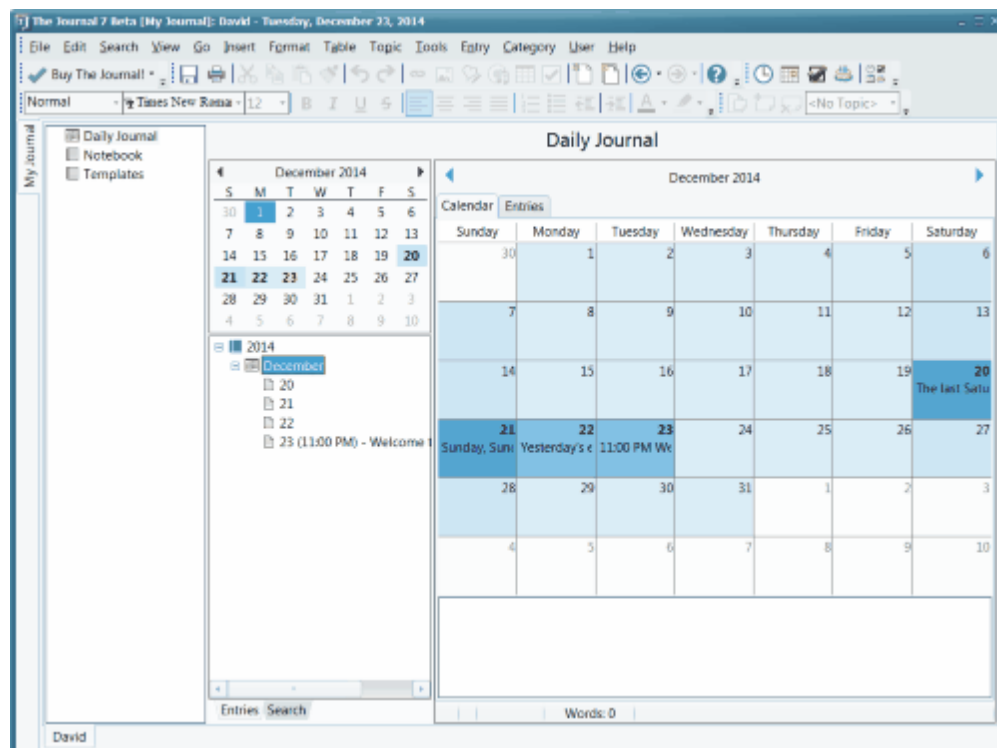
Calendar categories can display your entries in monthly and yearly calendar views.

In both calendar views, dates with entries have a slightly darker background and the day number **bolded** (see below). You can see the first line of the entry (or entries) on a date by moving the mouse over that date.

Reminders for a date are displayed with their calendar charm and the time, if applicable. You can see the full name and time of the reminder by moving the mouse over the reminder.

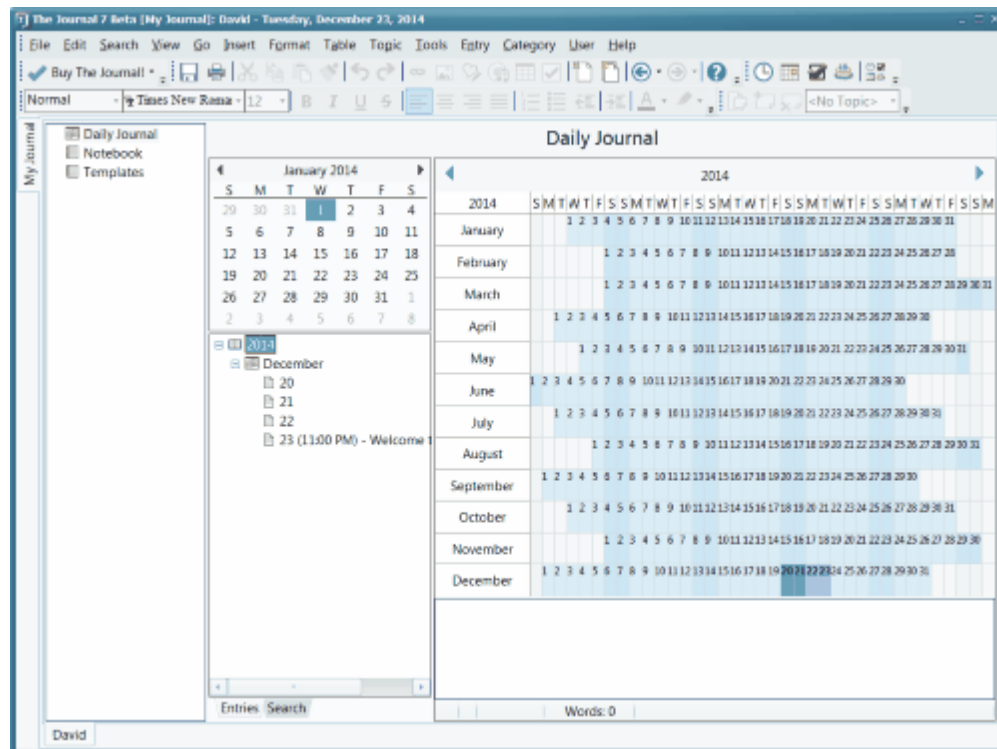
If you click on a date, you will see a list of all the reminders for that date and summaries of the entry or entries on that date. Entries with photos in them will have those photos reduced to thumbnails. You can click-and-drag to select multiple, consecutive dates.

## Month Calendar



The month calendar view has a special "Entries" tab. This tab displays a report of all entries in the current month, in order.

## Year Calendar



### 5.3.2 Loose-leaf Categories

Loose-leaf categories are often called "notebook" categories because of the "Notebook" loose-leaf category that is created automatically for new users of The Journal.

Entries in a loose-leaf category are not tied to a specific date (as they are in [calendar categories](#)). Instead, entries in a loose-leaf category are named documents, arranged by you, just like a loose-leaf notebook.

Loose-leaf category entries can be arranged in any order (just click-and-drag in the entry tree), and entries can have sub-entries (which can have sub-entries, which can have sub-entries, ...). Arrange your entries by clicking on the entry in the tree "dragging" it where you want it. You can move entries to be "in front of" other entries (hover the mouse over the entry icon) or a "child of" other entries (hover the mouse over the name of the entry). The mouse cursor will display differently based on the action that will be taken.

Loose-leaf entries can be sorted (forward and backward) by name, date create, date modified--or not sorted at all.

### 5.3.3 Shared Categories

Categories can be "shared" by users within a [Journal Volume](#).

A shared category can be accessed by each user that links to it (and provides the optional sharing password). All entries in the shared category are available.

Categories can be shared as either "read only" or "full access". A read only shared category allows all entries in the category to be read, but those entries can only be updated by the user that owns the category. The entries in a full access shared category, on the other hand, are treated just like any other entries. They can be read, edited, deleted, or even re-arranged (in loose-leaf categories).

To see the available shared categories, click on the **Category** menu and choose "**Shared Categories...**"

See [Category Options: Sharing](#) for more information.

### 5.3.4 Merging Categories

Click on the **Category** menu and choose "**Merge Categories...**"

This form allows you to merge two or more categories into a single category.

You can merge:

- Loose-leaf categories into other loose-leaf categories.
- Loose-leaf categories into calendar categories.
- Calendar categories into other calendar categories.

You cannot merge a calendar category into a loose-leaf category (do it the other way).

You cannot merge into a read-only category.

NOTE: This operation cannot be undone. If you change your mind, you will have to restore the category or categories from a previous backup.

#### Merge these categories

Select the category or categories you want to merge from. Hold down the CTRL key when you click on a category so you can select more than one.

#### Delete categories after merging

Check this option to delete the categories once they've been merged.

#### Into this category

Select the category you want to merge into.

### 5.3.5 Add-on Packages

Add-on packages are collections of categories that can be installed into The Journal.

E-books, articles, [templates](#), and more can be added to The Journal with packages. Once a package is installed, the categories in the package are available as [shared categories](#).

Some add-on packages may create new categories for you automatically. For example, the **Memorygrabber** package for The Journal creates a "My MemoryGrabber" category for you to fill out. The questions and prompts for the different parts of your life are typed in, so all you have to do is type in the answers to quickly and easily create your memoirs.



To view the packages you have installed, click on the **Tools** menu and choose "**Add-Ons...**"

### Add-ons Available

This is the list of packages that have are available but have not yet been fully installed.

### Add-ons I am Using

This is the list of packages that you have fully installed.

#### Button: >>

Select an add-on package under "Add-ons Available" and click on this button to finish installing the add-on. The install process usually will create one or more new categories with the content of the add-on.

#### Button: <<

Select an add-on package under "Add-ons I am Using" and click this button to stop using it. Those add-on package categories that can be will be removed. Some of the categories you might have to delete yourself using [Category Properties...](#)

### Uninstall Add-on

This button removes the selected add-on package from The Journal.

#### 5.3.6 Category Properties

Categories in The Journal are highly configurable.

You can see these options by right-clicking on the category tab (or clicking on the **Category** menu) and choosing "**Category Properties...**" Then bring up the "**Calendar**" tab.

[General](#)  
[Calendar](#)  
[Entry](#)  
[Entry Text Style](#)  
[Security](#)  
[Sharing](#)

### New Category

New calendar and loose-leaf categories can be created with this button. Options such as the category name, the frequency with which the category will create entries (for calendar categories) and if the newly created category should be a sub-category of an existing category can be chosen here.

### Delete Category

When you click Delete, the highlighted category in the category tree will be deleted. You will be asked to confirm this deletion before it actually takes place.

WARNING: This operation cannot be undone (if you make a mistake, you will have to restore the category from a previous backup).

#### 5.3.6.1 Category Properties: General

These options are available to all category types.

##### Category Name

This is the name of the category. The name of the category can be changed at any time.

##### Category Active (Visible)

If this option is un-checked, this category will not show in the category tree (or as a tab). Use this option to "hide" categories that are no longer as active as they were. Should you need to access the entries in the category, it's a quick and simple matter to make the category visible again.

##### Category is a Folder Only

This option is only available for categories that have sub-categories. By default, a Master Category presents itself as a sub-category of itself. By setting the category as "Folder Only", though, this doesn't happen.

Any category with sub-categories can be designated as a "folder only" category. These categories are used to help you organize your categories and sub-categories.

NOTE: If a folder only category has entries, those entries aren't displayed. To access those entries, you would need to un-check this option.

##### Show day planner with active reminders

When this option is checked your active reminders for Tasks, Events, Appointments and Special Days will displayed in the day planner above the entry editor.

You can choose to show reminders for the current day, the current week, or for the next 2 to 7 days. And you can set the time scale of the planner for 1 hour, 30 minutes, 20 minutes, 15 minutes, 10 minutes or 5 minutes.

##### Only show if there are active reminders

When this option is checked (the default) the day planner will only display when there are active reminders.

##### Show list of active to-do items

If checked, un-checked to-do items for this category will be displayed in a list above the entry editor.

### Display start of week on

The category's calendar can be set to start on any day of the week, Sunday through Saturday.

### Tab/Tree Color & Tab/Tree Text Color

These options define the color of the tab and text when the option "Show category color on tab or tree" is active (User Preferences, Category tab).

By default, calendar categories and loose-leaf categories have different colors.

### Category sort order

The sort order option controls in what order the category tabs are displayed.

You can also click and drag categories in the list to re-arrange them.

#### 5.3.6.2 Category Properties: Calendar

These options are only available to calendar categories.

### Create a New Entry Every ...

A calendar category can automatically create a new entry for you every:

- hour
- 2 hours
- 3 hours
- 4 hours
- 6 hours
- 8 hours
- 12 hours
- day
- week (on a particular weekday)
- month (on a particular day: 1-31)
- year
- decade
- century

### Include time (or date) in entry

In addition, the entry can include a time stamp (for hourly, daily, and weekly calendar categories), the day (for monthly categories), the month (for yearly categories), and the year (for decade categories). If this option is checked, the default stamp will be the current time and/or date, but you can choose any time and/or date.

NOTE: The Journal doesn't save blank entries.

In any type of calendar category, you can also create a new entry at any time by pressing F9 (**Entry** menu, **Create New Entry** sub-menu, and choose **Create New Entry**).

### Round time to 5 minutes

If checked (the default), entry time stamps are rounded up to the nearest 5 minutes. Otherwise, the time stamp is the current hour+minutes.

### Display calendar folders for ...

Each type of calendar category (hourly, daily, etc) has a default set of "calendar folders" it displays in the entry tree. You can customize which folders are displayed with this option.

For example, if **"Years"** is checked, in the tree to the left of the entry editor you will see the years that you have created entries.

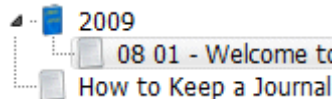
Actual entries are always displayed.

### Display full entry date and time in tree

If checked (the default), in hourly, daily, weekly, and monthly categories:

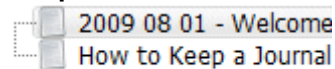
- If the display month folder (see above) is un-checked, the 2-digit month for the entry will be displayed along with the 2-digit day.

**Example:**

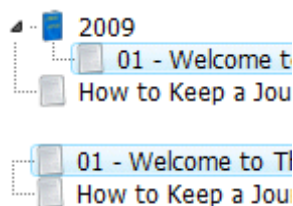


- If the display year folder is un-checked, the 4-digit year for the entry is displayed.

**Example:**



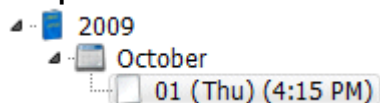
If un-checked, the above examples would look like this:



### Display day of week for daily entries in tree

If checked, daily entries will display the abbreviated day of the week (Sun-Sat) in addition to the day of the month.

**Example:**



### Display calendar entries after loose-leaf entries in entry tree

If checked, any root-level loose-leaf entries will be listed in the entry tree \*before\* the calendar entries.

### Automatically lock past entries

If checked, then past entries of the category are locked by default.

This setting can be overridden at any time to make changes to a particular entry. Just select the entry, and press F4 (or click on the **Entry** menu and choose "**Lock/Unlock Entry**").

Even if this option is not checked, you can make particular past entries locked (read-only). Just select the entry, and press F4 (or click on the **Entry** menu and choose "**Lock/Unlock Entry**"). "Locked" will display in the status bar below the entry editor to show that this entry has been locked.

### Start on latest entry by default

If checked, the latest entry in the category is displayed when you first open the category. New, blank calendar entries are not created automatically. To create a calendar entry, choose the date on the calendar, or press F9.

#### 5.3.6.3 Category Properties: Entry

These options are available to all category types.

### Default Entry Type

This setting determines the default entry type of the category, and what kind of entry newly created entries will be. In loose-leaf categories, this setting can be overridden to create an entry of any type.

#### Normal Document Entry

Document entries are formatted text documents, much like word processor files. Document entries can have images, movies and other types of files inserted into them. It is recommended that calendar categories use document entries.

See [Document Entries](#) for more information.

#### External Object Entry

External object entries are essentially Windows data files stored in (or linked from) The Journal.

See [External Object Entries](#) for more information.

#### Image Entry

Image entries are graphic files (BMP, JPG, etc).

See [Image Entries](#) for more information.

### Default Entry Template

The selected [template](#) will be inserted into new entries. For [calendar](#) categories, this template will be inserted into new entries for the current day (or week or whatever). For [loose-leaf](#) categories, the template will be inserted into all newly created entries.

## Entry Tree/Editor Options

### Display entry title in entry tree

If checked (the default), the title of the entry is displayed in the entry tree.

### Display first line of entry in entry tree

If checked (the default), the first line of your entry is displayed in the entry tree (up to 50 characters). You can see this by hovering your mouse cursor over the entry in the tree.

NOTE: If the first line of the entry is the same as the entry title, it will not be displayed.

### Display entry count in entry tree

If checked, the number of entries in the category is displayed in the entry tree.

### Display entry word count in status bar

If checked, the word count of the entry is displayed on the status bar beneath the editor. As you add or delete words, the count updates.

For calendar categories, this option defaults to off. For loose-leaf categories, it defaults to on.

### Display last updated date in status bar

If checked, the date the entry was last updated is displayed on the status bar beneath the editor.

### Display entry topics in status bar

If checked, the topics tagged to the entry are displayed.

### Save entry editor state between sessions

If checked, the position of the caret, including the selection of any text, and the scroll position of the entry editor is preserved for the entry. The next time you bring up the entry--even if you've closed The Journal and restarted--you will be exactly where you were.

For calendar categories, this option defaults to **Off**. For loose-leaf categories, this option defaults to **On**.

### Use WYSIWYG editor

If checked, the category's entries are edited WYSIWYG ("what you see is what you get"). That is, the entries are displayed exactly as they would print to the active printer.

## Loose-Leaf Options

### Loose-leaf entry default name format

This option controls the name given to new loose-leaf entries. By default, the loose-leaf entry name format is:

**%c Entry**

%c is replaced with the name of the category.  
%date is replaced with the current date in short format.  
%time is replaced with the current time in short format.  
%d, %dd, %ddd, %dddd - current day  
%m, %mm, %mmm, %mmmm - current month  
%yy, %yyyy - current year

**Loose-leaf entry sorting**

You can have your loose-leaf entries automatically sorted. The options are:

- None (no sorting)
- By entry title
- By date entry created
- By date entry updated

**Reverse Sort Order**

The entries are sorted as selected, but in reverse order.

**Printing Options**

**Edit Page Setup, Header, Footer**

Use these settings to override the page setup, header, and footer created in [User Preferences: Printing](#).

**Default Page Setup, Page Header, Page Footer, and Entry Header**

Use this setting to restore the page setup, page header, page footer, and entry header created in [User Preferences: Printing](#).

#### 5.3.6.4 Category Properties: Entry Text Style

These options are available to all category types.

**Entry Background Color**

This is the default color used for the background of document entries.

**Entry Background Image**

This is the default background image used for entries in this category. This overrides the entry background color, if that is also set.

**Font and Paragraph Settings**

Each category can be set to use a particular font and paragraph settings. By default, every category uses the default font set by the user (or the parent category, if this is a sub-category).

Click on "Edit" to edit the font or paragraph settings. "Reset" will restore the font or paragraph back to the default.

See [Styles](#) for more information.

#### 5.3.6.5 Category Properties: Security

These options are available to all category types.

##### **Category Entries are Read Only (and no new entries)**

When checked, this category and its entries cannot be edited or deleted. Also, no new entries can be created.

##### **Category Password**

If you want this category to have a password, enter it here. You will need to enter the password again in the "Confirm Password" field.

If the category already has a password, you will need to enter the existing password to change it or to clear it.

##### **Only Verify Password Once per Session**

If checked, you will only need to enter the category's password once per journaling session. A "session" starts any time The Journal prompts you for your user name password. Minimizing The Journal will also cause The Journal to prompt you for category passwords.

If this option is not checked, you will have to enter the password every time the category is selected.

#### 5.3.6.6 Category Properties: Sharing

These options are available to all category types.

##### **Lock Entries on Edit**

If you are using The Journal over a network and/or sharing categories between users, and there is a possibility that multiple users will be accessing and updating the entries of this category at the same time, you will want to have this option checked. When a user edits an entry, that entry will be locked, preventing other users from editing the entry at the same time.

##### **Prompt for Lock Message**

When "Prompt for Lock Message" is checked, all entries in the category are "Read Only" by default, and you must use **Entry | Edit Entry** (hot-key: F4) and enter a lock message. This lock message is displayed to any other users who attempt to edit the entry. Use this option along with "Lock Entries on Edit" to further coordinate your editing with other users.

##### **Category is Shared**



If checked, this option allows other users within the [Journal Volume](#) to link to this category and access its entries.

### Read Only?

This option is only available if the category is shared. If checked, then other users can only read the entries in the category. They cannot edit, delete, or re-arranged the entries in any way.

### Category Share Password

If you want this category to have a share password, enter it here. You will need to enter the password again in the "Confirm Password" field.

If the category already has a share password, you will need to enter the existing password to change it or to clear it.

The share password must be entered correctly by other users to link to the shared category.

Note that the share password is different from the category password described in [Category Properties: Security](#).

See [Shared Categories](#) for more information.

## 5.4 Database Maintenance

The Journal's entry database has proven very stable over the years, but it is always a good idea to make regular backups.

The Journal automatically prompts you to make a backup about twice a week (every 3 days). If you would like to backup more or less frequently, you can set this using the [Backup Settings](#).

See [Backup/Restore](#) for more information.

### Database Maintenance FAQ

[How do I backup The Journal?](#)

[How do I restore from a backup?](#)

[How do I see what is in my backup file?](#)

#### 5.4.1 Backup/Restore

The Journal's [Journal Volumes](#) should be backed up regularly. For more protection, it is recommended that you copy your backup file(s) to another computer or another location.

To backup The Journal, you have to login normally.

Backups can be made to any valid drive or folder on your PC, even network drives or external hard drives connected by a USB.

Further, once the backup is completed, The Journal can automatically copy the backup file to separate locations--even upload the backup file to an offsite FTP server.

It is possible to restore from a backup made with any previous version of The Journal since The Journal 2. (Restoring from a backup of The Journal 1.x, though, requires special instructions. Email [DavidRM Software](#).)

[How do I backup The Journal?](#)  
[How do I restore from a backup?](#)  
[How do I see what is in my backup file?](#)

#### 5.4.2 Backup Settings

Backup options can be set through the **File** menu, **Maintenance** sub-menu, and then selecting "**Backup Settings...**" These Backup Settings are also available from the **User** menu by selecting "**Preferences...**", and then bringing up the "**Backup/Restore**" tab.

See [User Preferences: Backup/Restore](#) for the available backup settings.

#### 5.4.3 Restore

To restore from a backup, click on the **File** menu, **Maintenance** sub-menu, and choose "**Restore from Backup...**"

##### Backup Archive

This is the name of the backup archive (\*.jbackup).

You can restore from a backup made by a previous version of The Journal (\*.JBU or \*.001). In this case, a [Journal Volume](#) must be created especially for the restore and upgrade.

##### Backup Contents

This will list the Journal Volume that have been backed up into this archive, including the date of the backup.

##### Restore Journal Volume

This command will restore the selected Journal Volume. Unless you pick an earlier date, the restore will automatically use the most recent backup of the Journal Volume.

##### Restore into New Journal Volume

This command allows you to create a new Journal Volume and restore into that, to prevent possibly overwriting an existing Journal Volume.

See also [How do I restore from a backup?](#)

#### 5.4.4 Repair The Journal Databases

To repair The Journal's [Journal Volumes](#) bring up the **Journal** menu, the **Maintenance** sub-menu, and choose **Repair The Journal Databases...**

The repair process analyzes The Journal's database tables, correcting any problems that may have appeared due to system shutdown issues or Windows crashes. The repair process also optimizes the tables and minimizes the amount of disk space required for all database tables.

In general, The Journal's database tables are quite stable. It is unlikely you will need to use the repair process more at all.

If you have a lot of entries (5,000+) this process could take a few minutes.

## Repair Journal Volumes

This button repairs and optimizes all Journal Volumes.

## Repair System Database

This button repairs The Journal's System Database.

### 5.4.5 Clean Journal Volume folder

Click on the **File** menu, **Maintenance** sub-menu, and choose "**Clean Journal Volume folder...**"

This command removes all unnecessary or extraneous files from the folder of the current [Journal Volume](#).

## 5.5 Entries

Entries, organized by category, are the core of The Journal. Entries can be text documents, external objects, or images.

Most categories use [document entries](#), which can include images and other types of files, though any entry type can be set as the default for the category.

[Document Entries](#)

[External Object Entries](#)

[Image Entries](#)

### Entries FAQ

[How do I import my entries from Evernote, Penzu, or WordPress?](#)

[How can I import my entries from another diary or journal program?](#)

[How do I insert images in my entries?](#)

[Can I insert digital photos in my entries?](#)

[How can I use tables in my entries?](#)

[How do I make my tables look like those in MS Word/WordPerfect/Etc?](#)

[How do I use topics in my entries?](#)

[How do I lock my entries so they can't be edited?](#)

[How do I post my entries to a blog?](#)

[How do I use templates in my entries?](#)

[How do I have a template automatically inserted in my entries?](#)

[How can I create my own templates?](#)

[Why can't I edit my past entries?](#)

[How do I create loose-leaf entries in my calendar category?](#)

### 5.5.1 Document Entries

Document entries are formatted text documents, much like word processor files. Text can be entered freely to any length. Any Windows font (TrueType, Type-1, etc) installed on your PC can be used in your entries.

Document entries can also include images (digital photos, clip art, [calendar charms](#), etc.), media files (audio and video), and even external objects like spreadsheets.

[How do I insert images in my entries?](#)

[Can I insert digital photos in my entries?](#)

[How can I use tables in my entries?](#)

### 5.5.2 External Object Entries

External object entries are essentially Windows data files stored in (or linked from) The Journal. If possible, The Journal will use the standard icon for the file when displaying the entry in the date or entry tree. Examples are: spreadsheets, word processor documents.

Double-clicking an external object entry will open the entry using the associated Windows application. If possible, the application will be "hosted" inside The Journal.

External object entries can be "linked" to a file. When linked, the file is not stored inside The Journal.

External objects cannot be printed by The Journal. Instead, you will need to use the default application for that external object to print it.

Loose-leaf entries can easily be dragged and attached as a sub-entry to any other entry, even a calendar entry.

### 5.5.3 Image Entries

Image entries are graphic files (BMP, JPG, etc) that are stored in The Journal.

Images can be bigger than the visible region of the screen. Clicking and dragging will scroll the image. The image can also be scaled using the "wheel" on your mouse.

Image entries are much more space efficient than embedding images in document entries because they store the image in its native format.

When printing image entries, the image is scaled to fit the page.

NOTE: Image entries are included for backwards compatibility with earlier versions of The Journal. For most users, [document entries](#) provide a more flexible and powerful way to organize images in The Journal.

### 5.5.4 Create New Calendar Entries

In a [calendar category](#), click on the **Entry** menu, **Create New Entry** sub-menu, **Document Entry** (hot-key: **F9**).

How this form works depends on the type of calendar category.

#### Daily

You choose the day, and (optionally) the time of the entry.

#### Hourly

You choose the date and the hour. You can optionally set the minutes of the entry.

### Weekly

You choose the week, and (optionally) the day of the entry.

### Monthly

You choose the month, and (optionally) the day of the entry.

### Yearly

You choose the year, and (optionally) the month of the entry.

### Decade

You choose the decade, and (optionally) the year of the entry.

### Century

You choose the century, and (optionally) the decade of the entry.

## 5.5.5 Saving Entries

The Journal automatically saves your entries in your Journal Volume, which is a database.

If you want to save your entries in a format that can be accessed by other software (like a word processor), you have a couple of options:

- **"Save Entry As..."** (on the **File** menu, **Export** sub-menu; hot-key: F12)
- **"Export Entries as Document..."** (on the **File** menu, **Export** sub-menu)

### Save Entry As...

The **"Save Entry As..."** command saves the currently active entry to your hard drive.

You can choose to save the entry in a variety of formats:

- **Rich Text Format** (.rtf) - All the text of the entry is saved, with full formatting (font, **bold**, etc). Inserted images and objects are saved into the file. Rich text files can be opened by MS Word, WordPerfect, and almost any other Windows word processor. This is the default format.
- **DocX Format** (.docx) - All the text of the entry is saved, with full formatting (font, **bold**, etc). Inserted images are saved into the file. DocX files can be opened by MS Word, WordPerfect, and almost any other Windows word processor.
- **Plain Text** (.txt) - All the text of the entry is saved, but without formatting. Inserted images and objects are not saved.
- **HTML** (.html) - All the text of the entry is saved, with full formatting (font, **bold**, etc). Inserted images and objects are saved in separate files.

### Export Entries as Document...

Use the **"Export Entries as Document..."** command to save one or more entries to your hard drive.

You can select any number of entries (even entire categories) and save them to the same variety of file formats described above. You can also save the entries in one, large file, or save each entry in its own file.

For more information, see [Export Entries](#).

### 5.5.6 Search Entries

Beyond searching for a word or phrase in a single entry, The Journal supports queries that can span all categories and entries. Plus you can search for text (word, phrase, collection of words), and you can search for [topics](#).

You can search:

- entry text
- entry titles
- image descriptions
- reminder names and notes

### Search Text

Enter the word, words, or phrase you want to search for here. Separate words with spaces. Words in quotes "like this" are treated as a single search term.

Queries are not case-sensitive, so don't worry about uppercase and lowercase.

### Where to Search

- **Search entry text** - Look for the word(s) in the text of the entry (a normal search).
- **Search entry titles** - Look for the word(s) in the names of entries.
- **Search image/media/object descriptions** - Look for the word(s) in the descriptions of images and objects.
- **Search reminder names and notes** - Look for the word(s) in the names and notes of reminders.

By default, the search will look in the entry text, entry names, image/media/object descriptions, and reminder names and notes. Turn off one or more of these to narrow the scope of the search (for example: to search only in image descriptions).

### Text Search Options

- **Search for word phrase** - The search text is taken as a single phrase. The entire phrase must be matched for the search to find anything.
- **Search for any word (OR)** - The search text is a collection of words (or quoted phrases) separated by spaces. If an entry contains any of these words, it will be listed. A "Match %" will be displayed, indicating what percentage of the searched-for words are present in the entry.
- **Search for all words (AND)** - The search text is a collection of words (or quoted phrases) separated by spaces. An entry must contain all of the words to be listed as a match. The words don't have to be in any particular order in the entry to match.
- **Search with query (phrase is match query)** - The search text is passed to the indexed search engine as a match query. This allows you to use special keywords like NEAR.
- **Match whole words only** - If checked, a word must be matched in full (no sub matches). This option is ignored when doing a "Search with query".

### Match Queries

See [Match Query Syntax](#) for detailed information.

## Search Topics

Select the topic(s) you want to search for.

The topics you have used at least once in an entry are listed first, in alphabetical order. All other topics are listed in alphabetical order following the ones you have used.

### Topic Search Options

- **Search for entries with any of the topics (OR)** - If an entry contains any of the selected topics, it will be listed.
- **Search for entries with all of the topics (AND)** - Only if an entry has all of the selected topics will it be listed.
- **Display only topic text in search results** - In the [Search Results](#), when viewing an entry (or all entries), only those parts of the entry tagged with the selected topic(s) will be displayed.
- **Include sub-topics in search results** - If an entry has a sub-topic of a selected topic, the entry will be included in the search results.

## Search Options

You can limit the number of categories searched. By default, the search looks in all categories.

### Search this date range only (for calendar categories)

Check this option to limit the search to calendar categories (like "Daily Journal"), and to further limit the search to the specified date range.

### Search recent entries first (for calendar categories)

Check this option to search from the most recent entries to the least recent entries.

### Search active category only

Check this option to look only in the active category.

### Search all categories

Uncheck this option to limit your search to the categories you select

### Include sub-categories in search

If checked, the sub-categories of the selected categories will be search, as well as the selected categories.

### Force re-indexing of all entries in categories searched

If checked, all entries in the categories to be searched will be re-indexed. This completely rebuilds the index used for fast searching, so it should not be done unless needed.

#### 5.5.6.1 Match Query Syntax

The search text is passed directly to the indexed searching engine. Match queries can include OR and AND and even NEAR. These are explained below.

### NEAR

The NEAR operator may be used to search for entries that contain two or more words or phrases within a specified proximity of each other. The NEAR operator must always be specified in upper case. The word "near" in lower or mixed case is treated as an ordinary token. For example, the following query:

engineering NEAR consultancy

matches rows that contain both "engineering" and "consultancy" in the same entry with not more than 10 other words between them. It does not matter which of the two terms occurs first in the entry, only that they be separated by only 10 words or less. You may also specify a different required proximity by adding "/N" immediately after the NEAR operator, where N is an integer. For example:

engineering NEAR/5 consultancy

searches for entries containing an instance of each specified word separated by not more than 5 other words. More than one NEAR operator can be used in a sequence. For example this query:

reliable NEAR/2 engineering NEAR/5 consultancy

searches for entries that contain "reliable" separated by not more than two words from an instance of "engineering", which is in turn separated by not more than 5 words from "consultancy". Phrases enclosed in quotes may also be used as arguments to the NEAR operator.

## OR

Similar to the NEAR operator, one or more words or phrases may be separated by OR. In this case, only one of the specified words or phrases must appear in the entry. For example, the query:

hello OR world

matches entries that contain either "hello", or "world", or both.

Any part of the match query, whether or not it is part of a phrase enclosed in quotes, may have a '\*' character appended to it. In this case, the token matches all terms that begin with the characters of the token, not just those that exactly match it. For example, the following query:

david\*

matches all entries that contain "Davidson" and "David's", as well as those that contain "David".

## Parentheses

Parenthesis may be used to overcome the built-in precedence of the supplied binary operators. For example, the following search text:

(hello world) OR (simple example)

matches entries that contain both "hello" and "world", and entries that contain both "simple" and "example".

## AND

An AND operator may be explicitly specified. For example, the following query is handled identically to the one above:

(hello AND world) OR (simple AND example)

As with the OR and NEAR operators, the AND operator must be specified in upper case. The word "and" specified in lower or mixed case is handled as a regular token.

## NOT



The NOT operator requires that the query specified as its left-hand operator matches, but that the query specified as the right-hand operator does not. For example, to query for all entries that contain the term "example" but not the term "simple", the following query could be used:

example NOT simple

As for all other operators, the NOT operator must be specified in upper case. Otherwise it will be treated as a regular token.

### Precedence

The precedence of the match query operators, in order from highest to lowest, is:

NEAR (highest precedence, tightest grouping)

NOT

AND

OR (lowest precedence, loosest grouping)

It is possible to specify expressions enclosed in parenthesis as operands to the NOT, AND and OR operators. However both the left and right hand side operands of NEAR operators must be either words or phrases. Attempting the following match query will return an error:

journal NEAR (fantastic OR impressive)

Queries of this form must be re-written as:

journal NEAR fantastic OR journal NEAR impressive

### 5.5.7 Search Results

Found entries are displayed in a manner much like that used by search engines on the Web:

[Daily Journal - Wednesday, September 08, 2004](#)

... some search text here ...

The first line is an entry link. Clicking on the link brings up the content of that entry, with the search text (or search topics) highlighted.

The next line shows one example of the search text found, with some context both before and after.

If the Search Results form is ever hidden from view, you can bring it back by choosing **Search Entries** on the **Search** menu, or by pressing the hot-key: **Shift+Ctrl+F**

### Stop Search

Stops the current search (if it hasn't already completed).

### New Search

Stops the current search and brings up the [Search Entries](#) form again.

### Results per Page

You can set the number of results shown per page, from 1 to 100.

### Print/Print Preview

Print (or Print Preview) will print either the list of results currently displayed, or the entry selected.

### Insert Page Break

To provide more control over the printing, you can insert page breaks. You can also remove the page breaks you insert.

### Show Page Breaks

Click on this command to see where the currently displayed text (result list or entry) will have page breaks.

### Hide Highlight

This command toggles the highlighting of search terms. This can be useful when printing the search results, or saving them to a file.

### Save to File

Click on this command to save the search results to a file on your computer.

### Next Search Term

Click on this button (or press the hot-key F3) to move forward through the entry, highlighting each of the search terms in turn. When you reach the end of the entry, **Next Search Term** will loop back to the beginning.

## 5.5.8 Entry Report Wizard

To bring up the Entry Report Wizard, click on the **Tools** menu and choose "**Entry Report Wizard...**"

Click on the report you would like to see, and the wizard will guide you through the parameters.

It's possible to save reports with their settings for quicker access.

### Daily/Weekly Entry Report

Use the Daily/Weekly Entry Report to collect all of the entries made in a given date range: a day, a week, a month, a year, or any range at all.

NOTE: This report is for [calendar categories](#) (like Daily Journal) only.

**Example:**

You have a project-specific calendar category called "Project Notes" where you track your daily progress, meeting notes, and so on. On Monday, you want to print out a report of what you did the previous week. So you:

1. Bring up the "Project Notes" category tab.
2. Click on the **Tools** menu, choosing **Daily/Weekly Entry Report...**
3. Select **Last Week**.
4. Click on **See Report**.

All of last week's entries in "Project Notes" are now compiled in proper order. You can review them and then print the report.

### Daily/Weekly Reminder Report

The Daily/Weekly Reminder Report is similar to the Daily/Weekly Entry Report, but only reminders reminders that came due or were completed in the chosen date range.

### New/Updated Entry Report

Use the New/Updated Entry Report report to see all of the entries that were created or modified in a given date range: a day, a week, a month, a year, or any range at all.

#### Look for:

- **Newly created entries** - Entries that were first created within the date range.
- **Edited/updated entries** - Entries that were edited or otherwise updated within the date range.
- **Show body of entry in report** - If checked, the body of the entries is included in the report. If it is not checked (the default), only the entry headers are displayed. You can click on the entry headers in the report to see the full entry.

### Entry Index

The Entry Index is a report of all entries in a category or categories, arranged and indented for clarity. Only the entry date or title is displayed.

The entry name is linked, so you can click on the entry name to see the actual entry.

### Topic Usage Report

The Topic Usage Report provides a summary of how many entries contained each topic over the selected date range.

#### 5.5.9 Entry Report Results

When the [Entry Report Wizard](#) collects all of the appropriate entries, it uses this form to display the results.

The entries are sorted by category, and then by entry date (for calendar entries) or by sort order (for loose-leaf entries). The category name is displayed before the first entry from that category, and the entry name is displayed before each entry.

### New Report

Discards the current report and brings up the report form again, so you can create another report.

### **Print/Print Preview**

Print (or Print Preview) will print either the list of results currently displayed, or the entry selected.

### **Page Break**

To provide more control over the printing, you can insert page breaks. You can also remove the page breaks you insert.

### **Show Page Breaks**

Click on this command to see where the currently displayed text (result list or entry) will have page breaks.

### **Save to File**

Click on this command to save the report to a file on your computer.

#### **5.5.10 Delete Entries**

Entries can be deleted either one at a time from the category's "entry tree", or in batches using the **Delete Entries...** command on the **Entry** menu.

Once an entry has been deleted, it cannot be recovered (except by [restoring from a backup](#)).

#### **5.5.11 View Deleted Entries**

Click on the **Entry** menu and choose "**View Deleted Entries...**"

Entries that you delete aren't immediately removed from the Journal Volume. Instead, they are marked as deleted and stored here.

You can use this form to recover deleted entries or to permanently delete them.

The entries are displayed by category.

NOTE: When you delete a category from Category Properties, that category's entries are immediately deleted.

#### **5.5.12 Lock/Unlock Entries**

Entries can be "locked" to prevent editing. A locked entry will display "Locked" on the status bar below the entry editor.

Press F4 to lock the active entry.

Press F4 again to unlock the active entry.

## 5.6 Export/Import & Syncing

The Journal supports the export and import of entries via several formats.

### Supported Export Formats

Text Files (.TXT)  
Rich Text Files (.RTF)  
HTML Files (.HTM)  
XML Files (.XML)  
Journal Export Files (.TJEXP, .TJXML)

**Text** files are simply text, such as files made with Windows Notepad. The only formatting in text files is marking end of lines with carriage returns.

**Rich Text** files, also called RTF files, contain full text formatting information. Font, paragraph alignment, colors, and so on, are all preserved. RTF files can be read by most Windows word processors.

**HTML** files are text files with "hypertext markup language" tags embedded. These tags control formatting of the file when it displayed with a web browser, such as Internet Explorer. HTML files are only supported when exporting.

**XML** is also a text format, so you can edit it in every ANSI text editors (for example Notepad). The Journal has its own set of XML tags, but you can browse XML documents exported from The Journal in every XML-compatible Web Browser.

**Journal Export** (.TJEXP, .TJXML) files provide a way to transfer categories and entries, with all formatting in the entries, as well as other category and entry information, between different installations of The Journal.

### Export/Import FAQ

[How do I import my entries from Evernote, Penzu, Diaro, DayNotez, or WordPress?](#)

[How can I import my entries from another diary or journal program?](#)

### 5.6.1 Export Entries as Document

The Journal supports a number of exporting options. You can export a single entry, an entire category, or a collection of entries from multiple categories to a file or files that can be viewed or opened by a word processor or Web browser.

Click on the **File** menu, **Export** sub-menu, and choose "**Export Entries as Document...**"

### Select Categories/Entries to Export

#### Active Entry

Only the active entry will be exported.

#### Active Entry with All Sub-Entries

The active entry and all of its sub-entries will be exported.

#### Current Day (in all Calendar Categories)

The entry for the current date in all calendar categories will be exported. No loose-leaf entries will be exported with this option.

### **Entire Journal (all categories, entries & reminders)**

Your entire journal will be exported.

### **These Categories/Entries**

Whichever categories or entries you select will be exported. Entire categories can be selected for exporting, or groups of entries spanning several categories.

## **Export Type**

**Rich Text (.RTF)** - Rich Text, or RTF, files include all text formatting and embedded images/objects. RTF files can be opened by nearly all Windows word processors.

**DocX File (.DOCX)** - DocX files include all text formatting and embedded images. DocX files can be opened by nearly all Windows word processors.

**Plain Text (.TXT)** - Entries exported to plain text files are stripped of all formatting except line-breaks. TXT files can be opened by any text editor and all word processors.

**HTML (.HTM)** - HTML is the standard format of the World Wide Web. They can be edited by any text editor, most Windows word processors, and, of course, they can be displayed with any Web browser. Most text formatting is preserved, though not all. Embedded images are extracted to JPG files and linked from the exported .HTM file.

## **Export Options**

### **File Options:**

- **Create a Single File for all Exported Entries** - This option creates a single file for all exported entries. Categories are given "headers" to separate their entries.
- **Create a File for each Exported Category** - This option creates a file for each exported category. Only entries exported from that category are included in its file.
- **Create a File for each Exported Entry** - This option creates a file for each exported entry. Depending on the number of entries exported, this option could result in a lot of files being created.

### **Include Category Name Header in export**

By default, exports to RTF/TXT/HTM include the category name as a header before the first exported entry for that category. Un-check this option to prevent this.

### **Include Entry Date/Name Header in export**

By default, exports to RTF/TXT/HTM include the entry date/name as a header for each exported entry. Un-check this option to prevent this.

### **Page Break (RTF export)**

- Between Categories
- Between Entries

If checked, page breaks will be inserted between categories and/or entries in the RTF export file.

## File Names

### Category File Name

If the Create a File for each Exported Category option is used, this setting controls the name of the export file.

To include the name of the category in the file name, use the "%c" flag.

### Entry File Name

If the Create a File for each Exported Entry option is used, this setting controls the name of the export file.

To include the name of the category in the file name, use the "%c" flag. To include the name (or date) of the entry, use the "%e" flag.

### Include "Full Path" in Loose-Leaf Entry Names

If checked, loose-leaf entry names include their full "path" of parent entries.

### Export Path Separator

If exported loose-leaf entries will include their full path, it is necessary to specify a replacement for the backslash ( \ ) character in the path. The backslash ( \ ) is not allowed in Windows file names.

This option is also used with the **File | Save Entry As...** command.

### Date Format

For categories with entries tied to a date, such as standard categories, this setting controls how the date is formatted in the export file name.

## 5.6.2 Export Entries as File

The Journal supports a number of exporting options. You can export a single entry, an entire category, or a collection of entries from multiple categories. The resulting export file can be used to easily transfer entries to another copy of The Journal or, depending on the file type, other journaling or notekeeping software.

Click on the **File** menu, **Export** sub-menu, and choose **"Export Entries as File..."**

## Select Categories/Entries to Export

### Active Category

All entries in the active category will be exported.

### Reminders

All of your reminders will be exported.

### Entire Journal

Your entire journal, all of your categories, entries and reminders will be exported.

### These Categories/Entries

Whichever categories or entries you select will be exported. Entire categories can be selected for exporting, or groups of entries spanning several categories.

### Select Export File Type

**The Journal Export File (.TJEXP)** - The Journal Export Format is a proprietary format used only by The Journal. It preserves not only all text formatting, but it also preserves all category and entry settings. TJEXP files are used primarily to transfer entries from one installation of The Journal to another.

**The Journal XML (.TJXML)** - The Journal's XML export format is similar to the TJEXP format, but uses XML. Being XML, other software could access the data, so long as they can parse The Journal's tags.

NOTE: Unlike the TJEXP format, the TJXML format is limited to 2GB.

**ATOM Publishing Format (.XML)** - The ATOM publishing format is a simple, xml-based format used by some blogs and other journaling software (such as Penzu).

NOTE: This format is limited to 2GB.

### Export Options

**Password Protect** - If checked, you will be prompted for a password to lock the export file. This option is only available for the TJEXP format.

**Compress** - If checked, the content of the export file is compressed when saved, resulting in a smaller file. This option is only available for the TJEXP format.

#### 5.6.3 Importing Entries

Click on the **File** menu, **Import** sub-menu, and choose **"Import Entries..."**

### Importing Documents

Many document formats can be imported into The Journal:

- Text files (.TXT)
- Rich text files (.RTF)
- HTML files (.HTM;.HTML;.SHTML)
- MS Word documents (.DOC)
- Word processing documents (.DOCX)

Document files are imported into the currently selected entry. If the entry is not empty, the document contents are appended to the existing entry. Only a single document can be imported at a time.

### Importing Export Files

In addition to documents, The Journal can also import a wide variety of export files, including export files created by other software, such as Evernote and Penzu.

- The Journal export files (.TJEXP, .TJXML, .JNX, .JNL)



- Evernote (.ENEX)
- Penzu (.XML)
- ATOM publishing format (.XML)
- WordPress export (.XML)

As you can see, a number of export files use the .XML file extension. The Journal opens the XML file and determines the type of export it contains.

The Journal export file types (.TJEXP, .TJXML, .JNX, .JNL) bring up the [Import Entries](#) form, allowing you to choose which categories and entries to import. The other file formats prompt you for the category you wish to import into and import all the entries in the file.

If the category you are importing into already has entries, The Journal will verify every entry before importing it. If an entry already exists in the category, and the current entry is identical to the entry being imported, the current entry is kept. If the entry being imported is different from the current entry, though, you will be prompted for proper handling. You can choose to either import the new entry (overwriting the existing entry), keep the current entry (discarding the import entry), or keep both entries.

See also: [Batch Entry Import](#) and [How do I import my entries from Evernote, Penzu, or WordPress?](#)

#### 5.6.4 Import Entries

This form is used for The Journal's export files (.TJEXP, .TJXML, .JNX, .JNL), as well as export files from Evernote (.enex), Penzu (.xml), and WordPress (.xml).

##### Select Categories/Entries to Import

Check a category to import that category and all of its entries, including any sub-categories.

You can also expand a category to select one or more specific entries to import.

##### Entry Preview

When you click on an entry in the tree, the content of the entry is displayed here.

##### Import

If you have checked any categories or entries, only those categories and/or entries will be imported.

If you check nothing, all categories and entries in the export file will be imported.

For each category being imported, you will be prompted to use an existing category (if you already have a category with the same name of the same type) or to create a new category. It is also possible to skip a category during the import.

If the category you are importing into already has entries, The Journal will verify every entry before importing it. If an entry already exists in the category, and the current entry is identical to the entry being imported, the current entry is kept. If the entry being imported is different from the current entry, though, you will be prompted for proper handling. You can choose to either import the new entry (overwriting the existing entry), keep the current entry (discarding the import entry), or keep both entries.

### 5.6.5 Importing Entries from Other Journal Software

Many people, myself included, have kept their personal journals using other software.

There are a couple of ways of importing these previously existing entries. Which method to use depends on your circumstances: which software was used, how the entries are saved, etc.

Some software, such as Evernote or Penzu, can create export files that The Journal can read. See [Importing Entries](#) and [How do I import my entries from Evernote, Penzu, or WordPress?](#) for more information. Most other software, though, will require you to use one of the processes described below.

#### Batch Export/Batch Import

The most convenient method is to use the other software's export capability and The Journal's import features.

1. Create a temporary folder on your hard drive.
2. Export your entries from the other software into individual text (.txt), rich text (.rtf), or HTML (.htm;.html) files. Export to the temporary folder you created in #1. If the entries are for a particular day, make sure the date is used in the name of the exported file. The best date format will use a 4-digit year, a 2-digit month, and a 2-digit day.

**Example:**

1993-10-05.rtf (entry for 5 October, 1993)

3. Once you have the entries exported, start The Journal. On the **File** menu, **Import** sub-menu, choose "**Batch Entry Import...**" to import the entries into The Journal.
4. Under "The entries to be imported are:" choose "Each in a separate file (one entry per file)".
5. Choose the category you want to import the entries into (like "Daily Journal").
6. Browse to the temporary folder where your exported entries are.
7. Set the "Specify Date Format" to match how the export named your entries.

**Example:**

yyyy-mm-dd.rtf

Then do the import.

See [Batch Entry Import](#) for more information.

#### Copy-and-Paste Method

If the software you were using does not support exporting files, but was a Windows program, then this method will work. It's not the most efficient method, but it's the same way yours truly (the author) "imported" 3 years of entries made in Microsoft Word documents (one document per month).

1. Launch both the original software and The Journal.
2. In The Journal, select the Category to receive the imported text. Then use the calendar and choose the appropriate entry date, or create the new entry.

3. Use the Windows Taskbar (or Alt-Tab) to bring up the original software.
4. Select the text in the original software that you wish to import into The Journal, and then copy the text to the Windows clipboard (Edit | Copy).
5. Use the Windows Taskbar (or Alt-Tab) to bring up The Journal and paste the text in the active entry (Edit | Paste or Ctrl-V).
6. Repeat until all of the desired entries from the old software have been entered into The Journal.

### 5.6.6 Batch Entry Import

Many journal software products support exporting your entries in that software to a collection of text (\*.TXT), rich text (\*.RTF), DocX (\*.DOCX), or HTML (\*.HTML) files. With the **Batch Entry Import** form (on the **File** menu, **Import** sub-menu), you can import those files directly into The Journal.

InfoSelect v8/v9 HTML export files - The Journal can import notes exported from InfoSelect v8/v9 to HTML format. When you select this option, you will need to select a loose-leaf category to import into. Also, you will have to browse to select the "Selector.HTM" file created by the IS export.

Batch Entry Import can also import entries that are all in the same file in the following formats:

- Simple CSV (comma-separated values) (Format: "Date/Time", "Entry Text")
- DayNotez CSV file
- 750words.com export file
- Cumberland Diary export file
- WordPress export file (.xml) - both posts and pages
- Evernote export file (.enex)
- Penzu export file (ATOM publishing format) (.xml)
- Diaro export file (text entries only) (.xml)
- Lotus Organizer CSV file
- Orange Diary Pro CSV file
- EfficientPIM CSV file

If you need support for another export file format, contact DavidRM Software: [support@davidrm.com](mailto:support@davidrm.com)

WordPress NOTE: When importing a WordPress export file, if a post includes <img ... /> tags, The Journal will attempt to download those images and insert them into the entry.

Evernote NOTE: The Journal will attempt to load most types of files attached to a note: images (PNG, JPG, etc), applications (PDF's, docs, etc), and media files (audio & video).

### Importing into a Calendar Category

To be imported into a [calendar category](#), the entry files must all use a standard naming convention. The date of the entry must be included in the file name. The best date format will use a 4-digit year, a 2-digit month, and a 2-digit day.

If the entries you are importing have a timestamp, that should be specified, as well. Use the 24-hour clock for the time stamp, 2-digit hour (00-23), a 2-digit minute (00-59), and (optionally) a 2-digit seconds (00-59).

#### Example:

2001-05-01.RTF (entry for 1 May, 2001)

This would need a format of: YYYY-MM-DD

**Example with a timestamp:**

2007-08-16 16-24-00.RTF

This would need a format of: YYYY-MM-DD HH-NN-SS

NOTE: Dashes (-) were used instead of colons (:) in the timestamp, because colons aren't valid in file names.

You can also import files with long (December) and short (Dec) month names in the name.

**Example with long month names:**

2006 October 26.RTF

To import those files, you would need to set the date format to: YYYY MMMM DD

MMMM = long month name

MMM = short month name

**Importing into a Loose-Leaf Category**

When importing into a loose-leaf category, no special naming convention is required. The name of the imported entry file will be used as the name of the entry.

**Remove file extension from imported files** - Check this option to remove the file extension when naming the entries.

**5.6.7 Synchronizing The Journal**

Keeping two (or more) installs of The Journal synchronized (in sync) is simple, and can be done a variety of ways.

You can sync The Journal from any of the following:

- A backup file created by The Journal (.JBACKUP).
- A Journal Volume folder on an external hard drive.
- A Journal Volume in The Journal.
- An export file created by The Journal (.TJEXP, .TJXML, .JNX, .JNL).

In each case, the steps are the same:

1. Click on the File menu, Import sub-menu, and choose the appropriate "Sync from ..." command.
2. Select the Journal Volume, or browse to select the file or folder you're syncing from.
3. Select what you want to sync/import.
4. Map categories from the sync file to the categories in The Journal.
5. Review and resolve any conflicts in your entries, reminders, images, topics and text styles.
6. Run the synchronization.

NOTE: When syncing from a backup file, The Journal creates a temporary Journal Volume restores the backup file into that Journal Volume. If the backup is from an earlier version of The Journal, this Journal Volume will need to be upgraded before the syncing can happen. If that happens, you will see

notifications. When the syncing process is finished, this temporary Journal Volume is deleted. The backup file is not affected or updated in any way.

### Example 1. Syncing The Journal from Work to Home

You have The Journal installed on your laptop at work and your desktop at home, and you want to keep them in sync.

NOTE: This process takes longer to describe than to actually do. So don't panic. :-)

1. On your work laptop, run The Journal and create a backup file. **File, Maintenance, Backup The Journal...**
2. Copy the backup file you created to a USB/Flash drive or email the file to your home address.
3. On your home desktop, run The Journal and log in.
4. Click on the **File** menu, **Import** sub-menu, and choose "**Sync from Backup File...**" Browse to select the backup file. If your login has a password, you will be prompted for that. If you have more than one login, you will be prompted which one to sync from.
5. The first step of the sync process is to choose what you want to sync:
  - Categories & Entries
  - Reminders
  - Topics
  - Images (entry backgrounds and calendar charms)
  - Text Styles

By default, all of these options are checked.

6. If you are syncing categories and entries, the next step is to "map" the categories in the backup to the categories you already have. The Journal attempts to do this for you automatically. By default, if a matching category exists, it is automatically mapped. If a category in the backup does not have a matching category in The Journal, it will be set to be created and copied. You can change the mapping of categories and/or you can choose \*not\* to import certain categories by un-checking them in the list.
  7. Once the categories are mapped or set to copy, the sync process will analyze all the entries in the mapped/selected categories for conflicts. Conflicts only happen if the same entry is in the backup file \*and\* already in The Journal. In this case, The Journal inspects both the entry in the backup file and the entry in The Journal. If the two entries are identical, there is no conflict. If the entries are different in some way, how they are different is reported.
  8. If there are entry conflicts, you will need to resolve them. What this means is that for each entry conflict, you have to choose one of the following:
    - Import the entry from the backup file, overwriting the current entry; or
    - Keep the current entry (discarding the entry in the backup file).
- NOTE: If the actual content of the entries have a conflict, you have an additional option. You can view the two entries side-by-side and edit the current entry manually.
9. If you have any reminder conflicts, you will need to resolve those.
  10. If you have any image conflicts, you will need to resolve those.

11. If you have any text style conflicts, you will need to resolve those.

12. The last step is the actual syncing. Up until now, and even now, you can choose to exit the sync-ing process and nothing is changed or updated. Once you press "Sync", though, all of the changes begin and cannot be interrupted.

NOTE: The first time you go through the syncing process is usually the longest and most involved. You may to map categories and resolve a lot of conflicts. After that, though, you can usually just click Next, Next, ... Sync and you're done.

To sync the work laptop from your home desktop, you do the same thing, but sending a backup file from home to work.

### Example 2. Syncing The Journal from USB to Desktop

You have The Journal installed on a USB/Flash drive and your desktop at home. You normally keep the USB drive with you so you can access The Journal from any Windows computer, but you also want all the same categories and entries on your desktop at home.

1. Insert your USB drive into the desktop computer.
2. Run The Journal on your desktop computer and log in.
3. Click on the File menu, Import sub-menu and choose "Sync from External Journal Volume..." Browse into the folder on your USB drive that has your Journal Volume. The default path is:  
Z:\The Journal 6\The Journal Volumes\6\My Journal\
4. Follow steps 5-12 in Example 1 (above).

## 5.7 Images & Media

The Journal lets you include images of all sorts in your entries: digital photos, animated graphics, and icons (like Calendar Charms). You can also set images as backgrounds for your entries, much like you can with a Web page.

Beyond images, The Journal also lets you include audio and video files in your entries. Audio and video files are called "media files".

Read more about using images in The Journal:

[Using Images in Entries](#)  
[Entry Background Images](#)  
[Creating Your Own Borders](#)  
[Calendar Charms](#)  
[Creating Your Own Calendar Charms](#)  
[Loading Images](#)

Read more about using media files in The Journal:

[Inserting Media Files into Entries](#)  
[Playing Media Files](#)  
[Inserting Objects into Entries](#)

### 5.7.1 Using Images in Entries

#### Inserting Images

To insert images in your entries:

Click on this icon on the toolbar:



Or click on the **Insert** menu, and choose "**Insert Image...**"

You can also drag images from Windows Explorer and drop them into your entry.

#### Resizing Images

When you first insert an image into your entry, the image is resized to fit the entry editor. Click and drag on the edges of the image to resize it.

If you would prefer to view the image at full size, right-click the image and choose **Toggle Image Full/Fit Window**.

You can also double-click the image to toggle full size and back.

#### Image Descriptions

Images can be given descriptions. These descriptions are displayed when you hover the mouse over the image. Also, you can do searches of image descriptions.

To give an image a description, or to edit an image's description:

1. Click on the image to select it.
2. Click on the **Edit** menu, and choose **Edit Image/Object Description** (hot-key: **Ctrl+Shift+D**).

#### Searching Image Descriptions

To search through the descriptions of all images in The Journal:

1. Click on the **Search** menu, and choose **Search Entries...** (hot-key: **Ctrl+Shift+F**)
2. Enter the word or words you want to search for in **Text to Search** for.
3. **Un-check: Search entry text, Search entry names** and **Search reminder names and notes** (this will force the search to look only in image descriptions).
4. Click on **Search**.

### 5.7.2 Doodling in Entries

The Journal includes a simple graphic editor so you can doodle in your entries, and even doodle on other images. The doodler supports drawing lines and simple shapes, flood fill, and even typing text. The

doodler also has an undo and redo, though those only work within the current entry. If you select another entry, the doodle is saved in its current state, with no further undo/redo possible.

Doodles in your entries look and act like normal images. You can print them. Copy-and-paste them. Even change their layout properties (so text will wrap around them, for example).

### Inserting a Doodle

To insert a doodle in your entry:  
Click on the Insert menu and choose "Insert Doodle".

Click on the doodle to begin drawing.

Click and drag on the edges of the doodle to resize it. NOTE: If you resize a doodle \*smaller\*, you will lose the portion no longer visible. It is possible to undo a resize.

Move your mouse over the color selector (in the upper right corner) to see the full range of colors available.

When you select a new doodling tool (paintbrush, shape, etc), the options for that tool appear above it. After 5 seconds, the options will disappear to get out of your way. You can bring them back at any time by clicking on the tool button again.

### Doodling on an Image

Right-click on the image you want to draw on, open the Image sub-menu, then choose "Doodle on Image".

### Converting a Doodle to an Image

Right-click on the doodle, open the Doodle sub-menu, then choose "Convert Doodle to Image".

#### 5.7.3 Entry Background Images

There are two primary types of entry background image: borders and backgrounds.

Borders are graphics that run along the borders (left, top, right, and/or bottom) of the entry editor. Example:



Backgrounds are visible behind the whole entry, not just along the borders. Example:





## Setting the Entry Background Image

To set the background of the current entry: Click on the **Format** menu, find the **Background Image** sub-menu, and choose the background you want to use.

You can also set the entry background image to:

- **Default** - use the background image specified by the category (in [Category Properties](#) on the [Entry Text Style](#) tab), or the global setting (in [User Preferences](#) on the [Editor](#) tab).
- **No Background Image** - forces the entry to have no background image. This overrides the category and global settings.

The Journal includes a number of entry background images, but you are not limited to those. You can create your own.

### [Creating Your Own Borders](#)

#### 5.7.4 Creating Your Own Borders

Borders are simple to create, especially if you limit your borders to the left hand side of the entry.



1. Select or create a small pattern that repeats itself vertically (like the daisy on green pattern above).
2. Extend the image to the right with solid white (or other color) to a width of at least 1500 pixels. If you have a high-resolution display, you might want to extend to 2000 pixels or more.
3. Save the image to a JPEG (.JPG) or a PNG (.PNG) file. Both JPEG and PNG images are compressed, so they take up a lot less space in The Journal's database.

## Loading Your Border Image

1. In The Journal, click on the **User** menu and choose **User Images...**

2. Click on **Load Image**, and browse to select your new image.
3. Set the image type to: **Background Image**
4. Set the "**Position**" to: **Tile**
5. To make sure that the entry text doesn't overlap the border pattern, click on **Margin Offsets...**
6. **Un-check: Equal Values**
7. In **Left** enter the number of pixels wide the pattern is (the daisy pattern above sets the left margin to 30).

And that's all there is to it!

Once you have added the image, you can make it a default background in your categories (in [Category Properties](#) on the [Entry Text Style](#) tab), or apply it to specific entries (**Format** menu, **Background Image** sub-menu).

### 5.7.5 Creating Your Own Backgrounds

Creating your own backgrounds is at once simpler than borders and more complicated. Simpler because if you use a digital photo then you don't have to worry about the image tiling (though you could still do that), and more complicated because you have to make sure you can read text against the background.



Here are some hints for creating your own background images:

- **Open Space is Good** - If you are using a digital photo, pick one that has a lot of open space in the middle of the image. Pictures of the sky and ocean or simple textures like wood are good examples. You can have palm trees or other objects along the left side and/or bottom to set the location and the mood, but try to keep the middle clear.
- **Keep it Simple** - Expanses of sky and water are very simple backgrounds, making it easy to read text against them. If you really must have that brook bubbling over many-colored rocks, then:
- **Experiment with Masking** - Most image handling software (free example: [Paint.NET](#)) will allow you to mask or "washout" images making them seem dreamier or more cloud-like. This can make it much easier to read text over those images. Or:
- **Experiment with Font Colors** - Maybe if you switch away from dark/black fonts to lighter/white fonts you will be able to read text shown over the image.

- **Use JPEG Images** - You can use either Windows Bitmap file (\*.BMP), PNG images (\*.PNG), or JPEG compressed files (\*.JPG) for your backgrounds. JPEG files are usually much more compact (especially if you are using a digital photo), so you should choose that format when you can. Fortunately, most digital cameras create JPEG files automatically.

Also, check out the many free stock image sources on the Web, including:

- <http://www.sxc.hu>
- <http://www.photopress.com>

## Loading Your Background Image

1. In The Journal, click on the **User** menu and choose **User Images...**
2. Click on **Load Image**, and browse to select your new image.
3. Set the image type to: **Background Image**
4. Set the "**Position**" to: **Center**
5. If you want to adjust the text margins, click on **Margin Offsets...**
6. Check: **Equal Values**
7. Set the offset you want from the edges of the entry editor (most of the time, you will use values from 10-50).

And that's all there is to it!

Once you have added the image, you can make it a default background in your categories (in [Category Properties](#) on the [Entry Text Style](#) tab), or apply it to specific entries (**Format** menu, **Background Image** sub-menu).

### 5.7.6 Calendar Charms

Calendar Charms are small icons that you can use to mark special entries. Mark good days, mark bad days, mark appointments, mark holidays, and more.

Calendar Charms are displayed on the calendar, as well as in the "entry tree". Every entry can be marked with a Calendar Charm, in calendar categories and even in loose-leaf categories.

Calendar Charms can also be inserted into your entries as you type much like emoticons (or very small clip art).

## Setting (or Changing) an Entry's Calendar Charm

Menu: **Entry | Entry Calendar Charm**

Hot-key: **Ctrl+F2**

## Removing an Entry's Calendar Charm

To remove the Calendar Charm from an entry, do this:

1. Bring up the **Set Entry Calendar Charm** form (**Ctrl+F2**).

2. Click on **Clear**.

### Inserting a Calendar Charm in an Entry

Menu: **Insert | Insert Calendar Charm**

Hot-key: **Shift+F2**

#### 5.7.7 Creating Your Own Calendar Charms

Calendar Charms can be single images, but are most often collections of small icons arranged in a grid.



Here are some tips for creating your own Calendar Charms:

- **Grid layout** - Arrange the icons in a simple grid (don't actually include grid lines), with every icon the same size.
- **Think small** - If you want to use the icons on the calendar (instead of just inserting them into your entries), it's best if you limit your icons to 16x16 pixels or 24x24 pixels. Larger icons will be reduced to fit the calendar, and they may not look as good.
- **Transparency** - Calendar Charms are assumed to be transparent. If you use the PNG image format, you can use the alpha channel to create transparency (and other special effects like anti-aliasing). If you use BMP or JPEG images (or PNG images with no alpha channel), the color at pixel position (0,0) will be made transparent when the icon is inserted or used on the calendar. The best transparency colors are very bright and obviously not part of the image (like fuchsia in the example above).
- **Use PNG Images or BMP images** - When you create your Calendar Charms, save them as PNG images (\*.PNG) or Windows Bitmap files (\*.BMP). This way your images (and your transparency) remain crisp.

### Loading Your Calendar Charms

1. In The Journal, click on the **User** menu and choose **User Images...**
2. Click on **Load Image**, and browse to select your new image.
3. Set the image type to: **Calendar Charms**
4. Set the **"# of Charms Across (X)"** to: (the number of icons across)
5. Set the **"# of Charms Down (Y)"** to: (the number of icons down)

And that's all there is to it!

When you go to set an entry's calendar charm (hot-key: Ctrl+F2) or insert a calendar charm in an entry (hot-key: Shift+F2), drop down the list of **Calendar Charm Collection** and choose your new charms from the list.

### 5.7.8 Inserting Media Files into Entries

You can insert most types of audio and video files into your entries:

- **audio** - wma, wav, mp3, mid, midi, ra, ram
- **video** - wmv, mpg, mpeg, avi, mov, rm

## Inserting Media Files

Click on this icon on the toolbar:



Or click on the **Insert** menu, and choose "**Insert Media File (Audio/Video)...**"

You can also drag images from Windows Explorer and drop them into your entry.

An attached audio file shows this icon:



An attached video file shows this icon:



**NOTE:** Some media files are very large. Media files larger than 10 MB will cause your entries to load and save slower. Media files larger than 50 MB may not perform well when stored in The Journal.

Also note: The Journal relies on Windows for media file playback. If you are using Windows XP, it's possible that not all types of media file listed above will play.

## Playing Media Files

To play a media file, doubleclick on its icon. This will start the Windows Media Player (or The Journal's built-in media player if the Windows Media Player is not available).

### 5.7.9 Inserting Objects into Entries

Beyond images and media files, almost any kind of Windows file (like word processor documents, spreadsheets, and more) can be inserted into an entry.

Click on the **Insert** menu and choose "**Insert Object...**"

Objects can be inserted as links to the files on your hard drive or network, or copied (embedded) into the entry.

## 5.8 Journal Volumes

A Journal Volume is an "entry database" for The Journal. A Journal Volume can contain one or more user logins and all of their categories and entries.

Journal Volumes can be placed on any available hard drive, internal or external or network attached, or even removable thumb drives. Each Journal Volume must have a unique name.

The Journal supports multiple Journal Volumes, each in a unique folder. However, most users of The Journal will only need a single Journal Volume.

By default, The Journal places all Journal Volumes in:  
**My Documents\The Journal Volumes\7\**

If you are installing The Journal on a USB/external hard drive, the default path is relative to the installed path:  
**.\The Journal Volumes\7\**

### 5.8.1 Journal Volume Properties

You can view or edit the properties of your Journal Volumes by clicking on the **File** menu, finding the **Journal Volume** sub-menu, and choosing "**Journal Volume Properties...**"

#### General

**Name** - This is the name of the Journal Volume. This name is also the name of the folder where the Journal Volume resides.

**Auto-load when The Journal starts** - If checked (the default), the Journal Volume is opened and loaded when The Journal starts up. If this option is not checked, you can still open the Journal Volume by clicking on the **File** menu, finding the **Journal Volume** sub-menu, and choosing "**Open Journal Volume...**"

**Exclude from automatic backups** - If checked, the Journal Volume is *not* backed up during an automatic backup (for example, when closing The Journal). This property does not affect manually started backups.

The path to the Journal Volume is displayed, as is the date of the last backup (if any).

#### Security

**No new users can be created in Journal Volume** - While this option is checked, no new users can be created in this Journal Volume.

**Journal Volume is Read Only** - Check this option to make the entire Journal Volume "read only". This prevents the creation of new users, new categories, and new entries.

### 5.8.2 Delete Users

To remove a user from the current Journal Volume, you must be able to provide the user's password. The user and all of her categories and all of her entries in those categories will be deleted.

## Deleting a User

1. Click on the **File** menu, find the **Journal Volume** sub-menu, and choose "**Delete User(s)...**"
2. Choose the user login name to delete.
3. Enter the user's password.
4. Click on **Delete**. You will be asked to confirm the delete one more time before it actually happens.

NOTE: Once deleted, a user CAN NOT be recovered (except by [restoring from a backup](#) or [syncing from a backup](#)).

## 5.9 Links

The Journal supports hypertext-style links in [document entries](#).

The easiest way to use links in The Journal is to click on this toolbar icon:



Or click on the **Insert** menu and choose **Insert Link...**

There are three types of link: [entry links](#), [file links](#), and [Internet links](#). Entry links are links to another entry in The Journal. File links are links to files on your PC, or on your local network. Internet links are links to web pages or email addresses.

Similar to a web browser, The Journal allows links to have a "tag" that is displayed for the link. For example, instead of displaying the entry link this way: [entry:Daily Journal\2008\12\07](#), the link could have a tag such as ["My Birthday Last Year"](#).

The Journal supports both tagged and un-tagged links. Un-tagged links are usually typed in by hand. The Journal detects these and highlights them as you type. You can click on the link and it behaves normally.

[Bookmarks](#) are supported for linking to a particular location in an entry.

### 5.9.1 Entry Links

Entry Links are special "hyperlinks" in The Journal that allow "jumping" to another entry.

Entry links can be "tagged" to hide the link information behind more descriptive text. Entry links can also point to [bookmarks](#) within the entry.

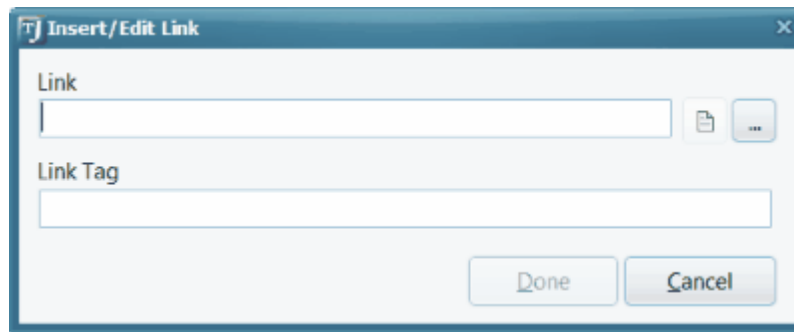
## Linking to an Entry

The easiest way to link to an entry is to click on this toolbar icon:



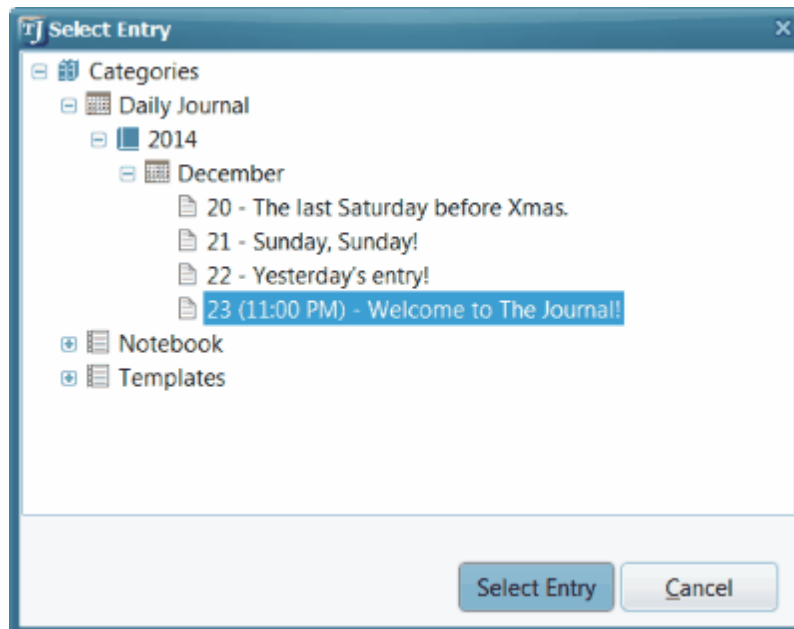
Or click on the **Insert** and choose **Insert Link...**

This will bring up the **Insert Link** form:



Then click on the "Select Entry" button:

And select the entry you want to link to:



If an entry has [bookmarks](#), those will be displayed beneath the entry in the tree.

#### 5.9.1.1 Typing Out Entry Links

You can also type out entry links by hand (instead of using **Insert Link** on the **Insert** menu).

### Typing out Links to Calendar Entries

To do that requires using the following format:

**entry:Category Name\\Entry\\Date**

or:

**entry:Category Name\\\***

**Category Name** - the name of the category where the entry is located. If Category Name is omitted, then the entry is assumed to be in the current category.



Sub-categories should be clarified by listing their parent categories first, separated by a backslash (""). If no path is given, then the first category with the given name is used.

**Entry\Date** - the date of the entry. The default format for entry dates in links is: **YYYYMMDD** (note the use of backslashes instead of slashes).

**Example:**

entry:Daily Journal\\2009\07\18

**Alternate Entry Date Formats**

If you do not use the above format, then the date must be in a system-recognizable format. For users in the US, the standard MM/DD/YY (or YYYY) format works (note the use of the forward slash in this case). For users in the Europe, however, the format would (usually) be DD/MM/YY (or YYYY).

The date must consist of two or three numbers, separated by the character defined as the "date separator" in your Windows Locale (in the US that's the slash / [forward slash] by default). The order for month, day, and year is determined by the by your Locale as well (US default is m/d/y).

If the date contains only two numbers, it is interpreted as a date (m/d or d/m) in the current year.

NOTE: These are Windows Locale settings, and not related to the date format used in The Journal for inserting dates.

**Example:**

entry:Daily Journal\\4/9/2001

**Current Entry Date** - If an asterisk ( \* ) is used in place of the entry date, then the entry link will jump to the current entry date in the category.

**Example:**

entry:Daily Journal\\\*

**Typing out Links to Loose-leaf Entries**

In a similar way, you can type in links to loose-leaf entries:

**entry:Category Name\\Entry Name**

or

**entry:Category Name\\Entry\Path**

**Category Name** - same as above.

**Entry Name** - the name of the entry. The entry name is not case sensitive. If a loose-leaf category has multiple entries with the same name, then the first matching entry is used.

**Entry Path** - the name of the entry, including the names of any "parents" of the entry, separated by a backslash ( \ ). For example:

**entry:Notebook\\Recipes\English Muffins**

"Notebook" is a loose-leaf category. "Recipes" is an entry with a sub-entry named "English Muffins".

**Default Entry Link** - If an asterisk ( \* ) is used in place of the entry name or path, then the entry link will jump to the current default entry in the category.

## Typing out Links to Loose-leaf Attachments of Calendar Entries

The format for entry links to loose-leaf attachments (sub-entries) of calendar entries is a bit more involved:

**entry:Category Name\\Entry Date\\Attachment Name**

or even:

**entry:Category Name\\Entry Date\\Attachment\\Path**

Seriously: Just use **Insert Link...** ;-)

### 5.9.2 External Entry Links

External entry links are links to entries in The Journal from outside The Journal. For example, via a link in an MS Word document or even a desktop shortcut.

Another use for external entry links is to link to an entry in a separate Journal Volume. Regular entry links can't do that.

Click on the **Entry** menu and choose "**Copy External Entry Link to Clipboard**".

You can then paste that link into the other software.

When you click on an external link, Windows will start The Journal (if necessary) to process the link and show you the entry. If your journal has a password, you will be required to enter the password.

NOTE: External entry links won't work in other software if The Journal is installed in a cloud folder or on an external hard drive. This is because The Journal has to set itself up in the Windows Registry to process those links.

### 5.9.3 Bookmarks

Bookmarks in entries mark specific locations you can "jump" to, using the **Go to Bookmark** and **Go to Bookmark in Entry** commands (on the **Go** menu) or with a [link from another entry](#). Go to Bookmark will take you to any bookmark in your journal. Go to Bookmark in Entry only takes you to bookmarks in the current entry.

To insert a bookmark in an entry, click on the **Insert** menu and choose "**Insert Bookmark...**" You will be prompted to give the bookmark a name. A gold star (★) will mark the location of the bookmark in your entry.

To remove a bookmark, right-click on the bookmark icon and choose **Remove Bookmark (bookmark name)**. Or set the cursor to the beginning of the line with the bookmark, then click on the **Insert** menu and choose "**Remove Bookmark**".

Bookmarks can make it easier to work with long document entries. Insert bookmarks at frequently accessed locations, then use **Go to Bookmark in Entry** (on the **Go** menu) to jump from bookmark to bookmark.

Bookmarks can also be used as link destinations. Entry links default to the top of the entry. By specifying a bookmark, though, you can link to any line within the entry itself.

When WYSIWYG formatting is active, bookmarks are displayed as a dotted line across the page.

#### 5.9.4 File Links

File links are links to files that on your PC or your local area network (LAN). When you click on a file link, that file is opened.

The file link format is:

**file://drive:\path\filename.ext**

##### Examples:

file://C:\My Documents\Resume.DOC

If the file name or the path contains spaces, then you must use the [Create/Edit Link](#) form.

File links can be "tagged" to hide the link information behind more descriptive text.

When you click on the file link, the link is passed to Windows for activating. Whichever software you have setup in Windows to open that kind of file will be opened.

#### 5.9.5 Internet Links

Internet links are web page addresses, email addresses, and so on.

Supported Internet link formats are:

Web Pages (<http://www.webpage.com>, <https://www.webpage.com>, or [www.webpage.com](http://www.webpage.com))

Email Addresses (<mailto:davidrm@davidrm.com> or [davidrm@davidrm.com](mailto:davidrm@davidrm.com))

Also supported are FTP (<ftp://>), Gopher (<gopher://>), telnet (<telnet://>) and news (<news://>).

Internet links can be "tagged" to hide the link information behind more descriptive text.

#### 5.9.6 Insert/Edit Link

The Insert/Edit Link form can be used for either [entry links](#), [file links](#), or [Internet links](#).

The easiest way to create a link is to click on this toolbar icon:



Or click on the **Insert** and choose **Insert Link...** (hot-key: Ctrl+Shift+K)

This will bring up the **Insert Link** form:

## Link

This is the actual link information. For example:

**entry:Daily Journal\2009\07\18**

Or:

**http://www.davidrm.com**

## Link Tag

The link's "tag" is descriptive text that can be used to "hide" the actual link information. Only the tag is visible, and clicking on the tag activates the link.

Using the examples above, valid tags would be:

**Saturday, July 18, 2009**

Or:

**DavidRM Software Home Page**

If no tag is specified, the link is inserted into the entry just as if it had been typed.

### 5.9.7 Typing out Links with Tags

You can type links that have a descriptive tag with this format:

**[[link|tag]]**

"link" can be either an [entry link](#) or an [internet link](#). "tag" can be any single line of text (no ENTER).

After you type the closing **]]**, the typed out link will be converted to a tagged link.

Example:

**[[http://www.davidrm.com/|DavidRM Software]]**

## 5.10 Printing

The Journal supports a powerful collection of printing options. You can print a single entry, an entire category, or a collection of entries from multiple categories.

### Select Categories/Entries to Print

#### Active Entry

Only the active entry will be printed.

#### Active Entry with All Sub-Entries

The active entry and all of its sub-entries will be printed.

#### Current Day (in all Calendar Categories)

The entry for the current date in all calendar categories will be printed. No loose-leaf entries will be printed with this.

### These Categories/Entries

Whichever categories or entries you select will be printed. Entire categories can be selected for printing, or groups of entries spanning several categories.

NOTE: Only document entries and images can be printed by The Journal. External object entries cannot be printed. You will need to use the native application of the external object to print it.

### Headers & Footers

**Print Page Header** - If checked, all pages will include the header for either the category or user (if one is specified).

**Print Page Footer** - If checked, all pages will include the footer for either the category or user (if one is specified).

**Print Category Header** - If checked, the category name will be printed before the first entry in the category.

**Print Entry Header** - If checked, all printed entries will be preceded by their entry name.

The page header and footer and the entry header are specified in [User Preferences: Printing](#), or [Category Properties: Entry Text Style](#).

### Page Breaks

**Between Categories** - If checked, a page break will be inserted after every category. NOTE: If no pages breaks are to be inserted between categories, and there are multiple categories being printed, then the page setups, headers, and footers for those categories will not be used. Instead the page setup, header, and footer defined in [User Preferences: Printing](#) (if any) will be used.

**Between Entries** - If checked, a page break will be inserted after every entry. NOTE: If your entries are short (less than one page), this option can result in a lot of paper being used.

### Additional Options

**Start Page Numbering With** - By default, all printouts by The Journal begin with page number 1 (one). If you would like the numbering to begin with a different number, you can specify that here. NOTE: If you enter a "5", this option does not cause the printout to start at page 5. Rather, the first page of the printout will be numbered "5" and the page numbers in sequence from there.

**Force Text to Black & White** - If checked, all text is converted to black and white before printing.

#### 5.10.1 Printing Headers and Footers

Headers and footers can be specified at the user level (see [User Preferences: Printing](#)) or at the category level. If no header or footer is assigned to a category, then it uses the corresponding setting of the user.

Headers and footers are functionally identical, and are configured using the same options. The only difference between them is that one is printed at the top of the page (headers) and one at the bottom of the page (footers).

Formatted text can be used in both headers and footers. This means you can use any TrueType font you have on your PC, you can use bold, italic, etc., and you can specify that the text be aligned to the left, right, or centered. An empty header or footer will not be printed.

With the use of [Print Macros](#), the text of the header and footer can include pre-defined values such as the page number, the category name, and so on.

When printing, the content of entries is printed within the margins set in the page setup (either at the category level or the user level). The headers and footers, if selected, are printed within the space above the top margin and below the bottom margin. If the header/footer is too large to fit that space, then the margins are adjusted so the header/footer can be printed. Also, there is a minimum "gutter" space between the bottom of the header and the top of the text (and the top of the footer and the bottom of the text). This gutter is calculated based on the default font for the category.

Also, if the printer cannot print to the full size of the page, the margins may be adjusted automatically.

### Default Header

**<CATEGORYNAME/>**

[Bolded category name print macro, default font, left aligned]

### Default Footer

**Page <PAGENO/>  
Printed on <PRINTDATE/>**

[Bolded page number print macro above the date printed, default font, both centered]

#### 5.10.2 Print Macros

Print macros are used in the headers and footers. They are used as "place holders" for values that replace them when the header or footer is actually printed.

Text formatting (font, bold, italic, etc.) that is consistent across the print macro within the header or footer is applied to the result of the macro.

The print macros are only processed when used in a header or footer. Any macros included in an entry are not processed, only printed.

### Print Macros

**<USERNAME/>** - the "User Name" specified in [User Preferences: Printing](#)

**<USERLOGIN/>** - the user's login name

**<CATEGORYNAME/>** - the name of the category currently being printed

**<ENTRYNAME/>** - the name (or date) of the entry currently being printed

**<PRINTDATE/>** - the current date

<PRINTTIME/> - the current time

<PAGENO/> - the page number of the page being printed

NOTE: The <ENTRYNAME/> macro uses the name of the entry that is being printed whenever the new page is started. If there are multiple entries printing on a single page, the name of the first entry printed on the page will be used. This applies to both header and footer.

## 5.11 Reminders, Tasks & To-Do

With The Journal's reminders and tasks you can stay on top of your busy schedule.

You can create new reminders with a right-click on the date in the calendar above your entry tree (if you've set it to be active in the category you're viewing), or right-click the date in the day planner (if you've set it to be active in the category you're viewing) or go to the **Tools** menu and open the **New Reminder** sub-menu.

There are four types of reminder: appointments, events, tasks and special days.

### Appointments

Appointments have both a date and a time, and you can choose to have The Journal popup a visual and auditory prompt when it's time for the appointment, or up to 6 hours before hand so you can get an early start.

### Special Days

Special days are birthdays, anniversaries, and holidays that we all want to remember--but sometimes those days sneak up on us, and even sneak past us.

### Events

Similar to both special days and appointments, events can be daily, weekly, or monthly, and can even occur at a particular time. The biggest difference between events and appointments is that events are assumed to repeat on a regular basis (like the 2nd and 4th Wednesdays of each month, or every other Friday).

### Tasks

Tasks are a special kind of reminder. Like events, tasks usually repeat, either every day, every week, etc. Tasks also have a status: active, done, skipped, canceled, or missed.

#### 5.11.1 Appointments

Appointments have both a date and a time, and you can choose to have The Journal popup a visual and auditory prompt when it's time for the appointment, or up to 6 hours before hand so you can get an early start.

You can create new appointment with a right-click on the date in the calendar above your entry tree (if you've set it to be active in the category you're viewing), or right-click the date in the Day Planner (if you've set it to be active in the category you're viewing) or go to the **Tools** menu, **New Reminder** sub-menu, and choose **New Appointment...**

#### Date

You can click on the calendar to set the date of the appointment, select it from the dropdown calendar, or type the date in by hand.

## Time

You will need to type in the time of the appointment by hand. You can also optionally include an end time for the appointment.

If you want an appointment without a specific time, use an [Event](#) instead.

## Popup Reminder

By default, the reminder will popup at the correct time on the date of the appointment. If you would like a popup reminder before hand, you can set that as well, up to 6 hours in advance.

You can also assign a particular sound file (\*.WAV) to be played when the reminder pops up.

By default, appointments are one-time events. To create an appointment that repeats daily, weekly, monthly, or even annually, create an [event](#), or look in [Advanced Reminder Options](#).

### 5.11.2 Events

Similar to both special days and appointments, events can be daily, weekly, or monthly, and can even occur at a particular time. The biggest difference between events and appointments is that events are assumed to repeat on a regular basis (like the 2nd and 4th Wednesdays of each month).

You can create new event with a right-click on the date in the calendar above your entry tree (if you've set it to be active in the category you're viewing), or right-click the date in the Day Planner (if you've set it to be active in the category you're viewing) or go to the **Tools** menu, **New Reminder** sub-menu, and choose **New Event...**

## This Date

You can click on the calendar to set the date of the event, select it from the dropdown calendar, or type the date in by hand.

Events can also be set to happen every week on a particular weekday (Sunday-Saturday), every weekday (Monday-Friday), on the weekend (Saturday & Sunday), or even every day. It's also possible to alternate, setting the reminder to be every other week or every other day.

More complex dates can also be set, including:

- Any day (or two days) of the week.
- Any weekday (or two weekdays) of the month.
- Any day (or two days) of the month.
- Any day (or two days) of the year.

Events set to a specific date are assumed to occur only once. Otherwise, events are assumed to repeat. You can override both assumptions in [Advanced Reminder Options](#).

## Time



If you want to set a time for the event, you can type one in, as well as an end time for when the event will conclude.

### 5.11.3 Tasks

Tasks are a special kind of reminder. Like events, tasks usually repeat, either every day, every week, etc. Tasks have a status: active, done, skipped, canceled, or missed.

You can create new task with a right-click on the date in the calendar above your entry tree (if you've set it to be active in the category you're viewing), or right-click the date in the Day Planner (if you've set it to be active in the category you're viewing) or go to the **Tools** menu, **New Reminder** sub-menu, and choose **New Task...**

#### Priority

You can give the task a priority, which is used when listing the tasks above the entry editor. The higher priority tasks are listed first.

#### Task Status

You can set the task to be active, done, skipped, canceled, or suspended. The "missed" status is set automatically. When you first create a task, it's set to "active".

**Active** - The task is considered in progress.

**Done** - The task is complete. If this is a recurring task, it will switch back to active automatically.

**Skipped** - The task is incomplete and has been skipped for the current period (day, week, month, year). If this is a recurring task, it will switch back to active automatically.

**Missed** - The task was incomplete at the time of its due date and marked automatically as missed. If this is a recurring task, it will switch back to active automatically.

**Suspended** - The task has been put on hold. If this task had been a recurring, it will not automatically occur again.

**Canceled** - The task has been canceled. If this task had been a recurring, it will not automatically occur again.

The task keeps a history of its status (go to **Advanced** tab, then **Status** in the **New Task** or **Edit Task**). This allows you to bring up a date and see those tasks for that date which were marked as done, skipped, or canceled, as well as any tasks which were missed.

### 5.11.4 Special Days

Special days are birthdays, anniversaries, and holidays that we all want to remember--but sometimes those days sneak up on us, and even sneak past us.

You can create new special day with a right-click on the date in the calendar above your entry tree (if you've set it to be active in the category you're viewing), or right-click the date in the Day Planner (if you've set it to be active in the category you're viewing) or go to the **Tools** menu, **New Reminder** sub-menu, and choose **New Special Day...**

#### Birthday

For birthdays you can enter both the date of birth, and even the time of birth, if you so desire (and know it).

If you know the year of birth, then the reminder for that birthday will be shown even when you're reviewing past entries. If you don't know the year of birth, just use the current year, and the birthday will show from this year forward.

For both birthdays and anniversaries, you can have the number of the birthday/anniversary displayed with the reminder. Use "%yy" to display the simple year. Use "%yyth" to display the year like "1st", "2nd", "17th".

**Example:**

My Birthday (%yy years old)

Displays as:

My Birthday (44 years old)

**Example:**

Jack Benny's %yyth Birthday

Displays as:

Jack Benny's 29th Birthday

## Anniversary

Like birthdays, you can use the current year to be reminded from this year forward, or you can set the actual year of the anniversary and see the reminder even in the past.

The default Calendar Charm for an anniversary is a bouquet of roses, but you can set that to any other charm you wish, to remember anniversaries of all sorts.

See "Birthday" above for how you can display the year of the anniversary.

**Example:**

My %yyth Anniversary

Displays as:

My 20th Anniversary

## Holiday

Holidays have a month and a day, and it's assumed you want to see the holiday every year, past or future. If you want to set an effective date for a holiday, so that it doesn't show up before that date, check out [Advanced Reminder Options](#).

The drop down list of months includes information about some of the more common holidays, like New Years, St. Valentine's Day, and Christmas. This information includes the month, day, and even a pre-set Calendar Charm for that day.

### 5.11.5 Advanced Reminder Options

These advanced options are available for all types of reminders: special days, appointments, events and tasks.

## Name/Description

Every reminder needs a name. The name doesn't have to be unique, but it should convey the intent of the reminder, since this is what you'll see most often.

For Birthday and Anniversary reminders, you use the %yy and %yyth macros to display the year of the birthday/anniversary with the reminder. See [Birthday](#) in [Special Days](#) for more information.

## Date/Time

**Date** - The date of the reminder can be a specific day, a repeating weekday or collection of days, or some pattern of days within a week, month, or year.

**Time** - The time of the reminder can be a specific time ("Eye Exam @ 7:00pm"), a start and end time ("Interview @ 9:00am-10:00am") or any time during the day ("Our Anniversary"). If you want to have a reminder popup at you, you have to specify a time for the reminder.

**This Happens** - A reminder can be a one-time occurrence, or it can occur every day, week, month, or year.

**Effective Date** - The effective date determines when the reminder becomes active. For example, if you create a reminder for your wedding anniversary, you can set the effective date to the date of your actual wedding. Every year after that, your anniversary will show on the calendar. You can also set an end date, after which the reminder will no longer occur.

## Display

**Calendar Charm** - Every reminder can be assigned a Calendar Charm. Default charms are chosen for the different types of reminders, but you can change them to be whatever you like.

**Show Reminder on small Calendar** - If checked, the reminder's Calendar Charm will be shown on the category calendar. If the same date has multiple reminders, only the top 3 will be shown, overlapping, on the calendar. Since the calendar can get cluttered very quickly, you might want to limit the number of reminders that show on the calendar.

## Show Reminder

NOTE: The "Show Reminder" options listed here only apply when the day planner option is turned **Off** (in Category Properties...).

**Show Reminder above Entry** - If checked, the reminder will be listed above the entry editor. You can double-click the reminder when it's listed above the entry like this, and edit it.

**That Day Only** - If checked, the reminder will show above the entry only on the actual due date.

**N Days Before** - If checked, then the reminder will show above the entry for the specified number of days before the due date. Use this option to get advance warning of a reminder coming due.

**Until Completed/Canceled** - If checked, the reminder will always show above the entry, until you cancel (or delete) the reminder, or mark it as done.

## Popup

**Popup Reminder when Due** - If checked, and if the reminder has a specific time it's due, a reminder will popup in The Journal.

**Popup Reminder N Minutes Before** - If checked, a popup reminder will happen the specified number of minutes before the due time. The popup will include an option for you to be reminded again.

**Play Sound on Popup** - The default sound is the Windows "beep". You can specify any sound file (\*.WAV) you want to be played when the reminder pops up.

## Status

**Priority** - A reminder can be given a priority from 1 (highest) to 100 (lowest). This priority determines how the reminder is sorted when listed above the entry editor.

**"Done" Charm** - You can specify a different Calendar Charm to display when the reminder is marked as done. The default is to use the same charm all the time.

**"Skipped/Missed" Charm** - You can specify a different Calendar Charm to display when the reminder is marked skipped, or is missed.

**Status History** - This is a listing of the reminder's status history. Most non-task reminders will show the date they went active, and the date (if any) that they were completed. Task reminders, though, especially recurring tasks, will accumulate a sequence of active, done, skipped, and missed statuses. You cannot edit this information.

## Categories

**All Categories** - If checked (the default), then the reminder is displayed, on the calendar, above the entry, or both, in all categories.

**Active Category Only** - If checked, the reminder will be displayed only in the category active at the time you created the reminder.

**These Categories** - If checked, you can specify which categories to display the reminder in. Note that in loose-leaf categories, like "Notebook", you can see reminders on the calendar for other days, but you will only be able to see above the entry reminders for the current date.

## Notes

You can enter text of any length in the reminder notes, just like a normal entry.

### 5.11.6 Day Planner

The day planner is your always there reference for all your reminders and can be set to display in any of your categories above the entry editor (see ["Show day planner with active reminders" option in Category Properties](#)). You can display your reminders just for today or for up to a week in advance.

All your reminders in this period can be editing, deleted or new ones created in the day planner, by right-clicking the reminders themselves.

The day planner can be scrolled or vertically expanded or reduced to give you a view of the reminders set at particular times, if necessary.

#### 5.11.7 View All Reminders

The "View All Reminders" form provides a list of all of your reminders, active, done, canceled, etc. The reminders are categorized by their type: Appointment, Event, Task, or Special Day. The "All" tab can be used to view all of your reminders of all types.

From this form you can edit, copy or delete reminders. Click on the reminder, then click on the button to "Edit", "Copy" or "Delete" the reminder.

#### 5.11.8 Daily/Weekly Reminder Report

Use the **Daily/Weekly Reminder Report** to view all of the reminders completed, canceled, skipped or missed in a given date range: a day, a week, a month, a year, or any range at all.

**Example:**

You have various tasks that you want to perform daily. Each week you want to print out a report of how you did the previous week. So you:

1. Click on the **Tools** menu, choosing "**Daily/Weekly Reminder Report...**"
2. Select **Last Week**.
3. Click on **See Report**.

All of the reminders that were completed, canceled, skipped or missed over the past week are listed. You can review them and then print a report, if you want.

#### Show all Reminders from:

There are 6 pre-set date ranges you can use: **Today**, **Yesterday**, **This Week**, **Last Week**, **This Month**, and **Last Month**.

If you need a specific date range, click on **This Date Range** and set the **From** and **To** dates appropriately.

#### Look In:

You can have the report created from the **Active Category** or **All Calendar Categories**. Or you can choose These Categories and select the specific categories to look in. Only reminders that are tied to those categories (or are global reminders) will be reported.

#### 5.11.9 Exporting Reminders

If you need to transfer your reminders from one install of The Journal to another, do this:

1. Click on the File menu, Import sub-menu, and choose "Export Entries as File..."
2. Select "Reminders" from the list.
3. Select Export File Type: The Journal Export File (.TJEXP)
4. Export to a file.
5. In the other install of The Journal, click on File, Import, Import Entries...
6. Click on Import.

If you need to move your reminders from The Journal to another program, however, you will need to use a CSV file.

The Journal supports exporting your reminders and tasks into a [simple CSV \(comma-separated values\) format](#) that can be imported by other scheduling software, such as Outlook, Sunbird, Mozilla, etc.

Reminders are exported as discreet events. That is, properties such as weekly and monthly recurrence are not exported. Instead, the reminder will be exported once for each time the reminder would occur within the specified date range.

## Start Date & End Date

These dates provide the range of reminders and task to export.

## Which Reminders

**Special Days** - If checked, [special days](#) will be included in the export file. Un-check this option to prevent special days from being exported.

**Appointments/Dates** - If checked, [appointments/dates](#) will be included in the export file. Un-check this option to prevent appointments/dates from being exported.

**Events** - If checked, [events](#) will be included in the export file. Un-check this option to prevent events from being exported.

**Tasks** - If checked, [tasks](#) will be included in the export file. Un-check this option to prevent tasks from being exported.

### 5.11.10 Importing Reminders

Reminders can be imported from any software that supports the [simple CSV file format](#) used by The Journal. This format was created some time back by other software manufacturers, and has become something of a universal format.

Reminders are imported as single [events](#) with a specific due date and time.

Some information exported from scheduler/planner software, such as required attendees, meeting location, and so on, has no corresponding type of information in The Journal. However, in order to be provide some degree of available of that information, they are imported and added to the "Notes" of the reminder.

### 5.11.11 Export/Import CSV Format

The first line of the CSV file includes all field names in quotes. The data, one record per line, is all string data.

#### Fields

[<<]	"Subject"	[>>]
[<<]	"Start Date"	[>>]
[<<]	"Start Time"	[>>]
[<<]	"End Date"	[>>]
[<<]	"End Time"	[>>]
[<<]	"All day event"	[>>]
[<<]	"Reminder on/off"	[>>]

```
[<<] "Reminder Date" [>>]
[<<] "Reminder Time" [>>]
"Meeting Organizer" [>>] (into Notes)
"Required Attendees" [>>] (into Notes)
"Optional Attendees" [>>] (into Notes)
"Meeting Resources" [>>] (into Notes)
"Billing Information"
"Categories"
"Description" [>>] (into Notes)
"Location" [>>] (into Notes)
"Mileage"
"Priority" [>>] (into Notes)
"Private"
"Sensitivity"
"Show time as"
```

```
[<<] Exported by The Journal.
[>>] Imported by The Journal.s
```

### 5.11.12 Missed Reminders

The Missed Reminders report is run automatically when you log into The Journal. This report displays reminders that were missed or had their due dates/times pass since the last time you logged in.

### 5.11.13 To-Do Items (Checkboxes)

The Journal supports simple to-do items. They look a bit like [task reminders](#), but they are created on-the-fly in your document entries.

#### When to Use a To-Do Item

If you have a one-off chore you need to do today or in the next few days, a to-do item is perfect. Create the to-do item, and check it when you're done.

For a recurring chore, something that happens every week or every month, a reminder (either a task, event or an appointment) would be a better choice.

#### To Create a To-Do Item

Click on the **Insert** menu and choose **"Insert To-Do Item (Checkbox)"**.

That will insert a checkbox into your entry. Whatever you type after the checkbox will be the description of the to-do item.

The to-do item can be either active (un-checked) or done (checked).

To-do items are specific to the category where you create them, so each category will have its own to-do list.

#### Seeing Active To-Do Items

Right-click on your category tab and choose **"Category Properties..."** On the **"General"** tab, check the option: **"Show active to-do items"**

All active (un-checked) to-do items for the category will be displayed above the entry editor.

**NOTES:**

- To-do items for the current entry are not displayed.
- To-do items that are checked off today will remain in the list for the rest of the day.

**Managing To-Do Items**

You can check or un-check to-do items in the list. When you do, the state of the to-do item (checkbox) is reflected in the entry where the to-do item was created. NOTE: If the entry is locked (read only) you will be prompted to force the update or not.

You can also right-click a to-do item in the list and cancel it. The to-do item will remain un-checked in its entry, but it will no longer show up as an active to-do item. To make the to-do item active again, go the entry, then check and un-check it.

**To-Do Item Report**

The **Entry Report Wizard** (on the **Tools** menu) includes the **"To-Do Item (Checkbox) Report"**.

This report will show you active items, done items, or both. You can run the report for any date range on the active category (or all categories).

## 5.12 Security

The Journal's security is designed to be as complete as possible while still offering a high level of convenience. Also, The Journal's security is scalable, so you only have to use as much as you need.

**Security Features and Options:**

- Password protection
- Entry encryption
- Hide hot-key
- Lock on minimize/hide
- Auto-hide on idle

The Journal also offers [Extended Security](#). In short, Extended Security provides more control over the login process, as well as makes The Journal's entry database that much more difficult to "hack."

### 5.12.1 Levels of Security

Not everyone wants or needs the same level of security. The Journal's standard settings provide a medium-to-high level of security, but if you want more security, or if you want the security features to stay out of your way, The Journal can support you.

The level of security you will want to set is based on the level of threat you perceive and/or wish to protect against.

**No Security**

The Journal can support a near-lack of security if you want it to. With the Auto-Login option you can have The Journal automatically log you in when it starts. See [Auto-Login](#) for more information.

The Journal also allows you to have a "blank" password.



## Normal Security

By default, a user must be created with a password. This password has to be entered before that user's categories and entries can be accessed.

All entries in The Journal are compressed and encrypted before they are saved.

The Journal can be quickly "hid" (minimized) with this hot-key: **Ctrl+J**

The Journal also has a "global" hot-key that you can use from any application under Windows: **Ctrl+Alt+J**

## Additional Security

The Journal can be "locked" when minimized or hidden.

The Journal can automatically hide itself, locking itself if that option is also set, after a specified period of "idleness". So if you get up and walk away from your PC, forgetting to hide and lock The Journal, it will automatically do this for you.

See [User Preferences: Security](#) for more information.

## Extended Security

For the Truly Paranoid, The Journal's Extended Security features provide a logical "next step" for The Journal's built-in security. See [Extended Security](#) for more information.

### 5.12.2 Choosing a Good Password

Having a password is hardly useful if you don't pick a good one. Here are some guidelines for choosing a good password (submitted by Bernard Beam):

- 6-10 characters in length (don't always pick the same length).
- Use mixed-case alphanumeric (a B c D ... 1 2 3 ...).
- Try not to have more than 2 alpha characters in a row.
- Try not to have more than 3 numeric characters in a row.
- Don't use the correct spelling of a word.
- When using numbers, use them for more than just substitutes for letters (1 for 'l', 3 for 'e', etc.).
- Don't use the same password for multiple applications or purposes.
- Change your password every 30-60 days.

In other words, "password1" is a particularly poor choice for a password. ;-)

A helpful mnemonic device is to select a phrase you will remember and use it as an acronym, for example the phrase "I never forget to brush my gums" can create the password (In42bmg).

See [Change User Password](#) for more information.

### 5.12.3 Security Details

Here are the high-level details of The Journal's security algorithms.

## Passwords

Passwords in The Journal are never stored in the database without being "hashed".

Passwords are salted and hashed a random, large number of iterations using the SHA256 algorithm. This is a one-way hashing algorithm, making it nearly impossible to guess the password from the hashed value and computationally expensive to attempt.

## Encryption

Entries stored in The Journal are compressed before they are encrypted. The compression removes redundant information from the entry, making the encryption somewhat more secure.

Compression of entries uses the ZLib general compression library.

Encryption of entries uses 128-bit AES (American Encryption Standard).

Encryption keys, password salts, and cipher initialization vectors are created using the Microsoft Windows CryptGenRandom function.

### 5.12.4 Extended Security

If you need a higher level of security than The Journal normally provides, then the Extended Security option may be what you're looking for.

## User Extended Security

A login name that uses Extended Security is significantly more secure than normal.

When Extended Security is turned on for a user, the user's master encryption key is encrypted using a key generated from the plaintext of the user's password.

NOTE: A login with Extended Security active cannot have its password reset. If you lose your password, there is absolutely nothing that can be done to recover it. This is a feature of Extended Security.

[Extended Security: Global Options](#)

### 5.12.5 Extended Security: Global Options

#### Use Extended Security for (User Name)

When checked, this option adds an additional layer of security to that user's categories and entries.

NOTE: A login with Extended Security active cannot have its password reset. If you lose your password, there is absolutely nothing that can be done to recover it. This is a feature of Extended Security.

## Automatic Login Failure

With Extended Security, you can specify that all login attempts fail after a certain number of consecutive failures.

For example, if someone is attempting to guess a user's password, then after the specified number of failures, The Journal automatically fails all other attempts. The Journal doesn't even check the password entered. The failure message is displayed, and The Journal prompts for the password once again.

This option functions regardless of whether Extended Security is turned on for a particular user. Setting any non-zero (0) number of tries activates this option.

In addition, when this option is set to any value besides zero (0), the user will be shown the number of unsuccessful login attempts when he logs in.

### Minimum Wait Time (in minutes)

Once the automatic failure option has activated, the user will have to wait the specified minimum of minutes before The Journal stops automatically failing attempts.

## 5.13 Styles

The Journal styles allow you to assign pre-defined font and paragraph settings to a block of text.

The Journal automatically creates the following styles for you:

**Heading 1, Arial 16pt bold, outline level 1, 3pt before-spacing, 3pt after-spacing**

**Heading 2, Arial 14pt bold-italic, outline level 2, 3pt before-spacing, 3pt after-spacing**

**Heading 3, Arial 12pt bold, outline level 3, 3pt before-spacing, 3pt after-spacing**

These styles can be edited or even deleted. They are provided primarily as an example of what styles are capable of.

You can create as many styles as you like.

If you change a style that is already in use, the change will be visible in any existing entries.

See [Style Options](#) for more information.

### Clear Formatting

You can quickly remove all formatting from the selected text by using the hot-key: **Ctrl+<spacebar>**

Or you can click on the **Format** menu and choose "**Clear Formatting**".

Clear Formatting forces the font to the default font for the category.

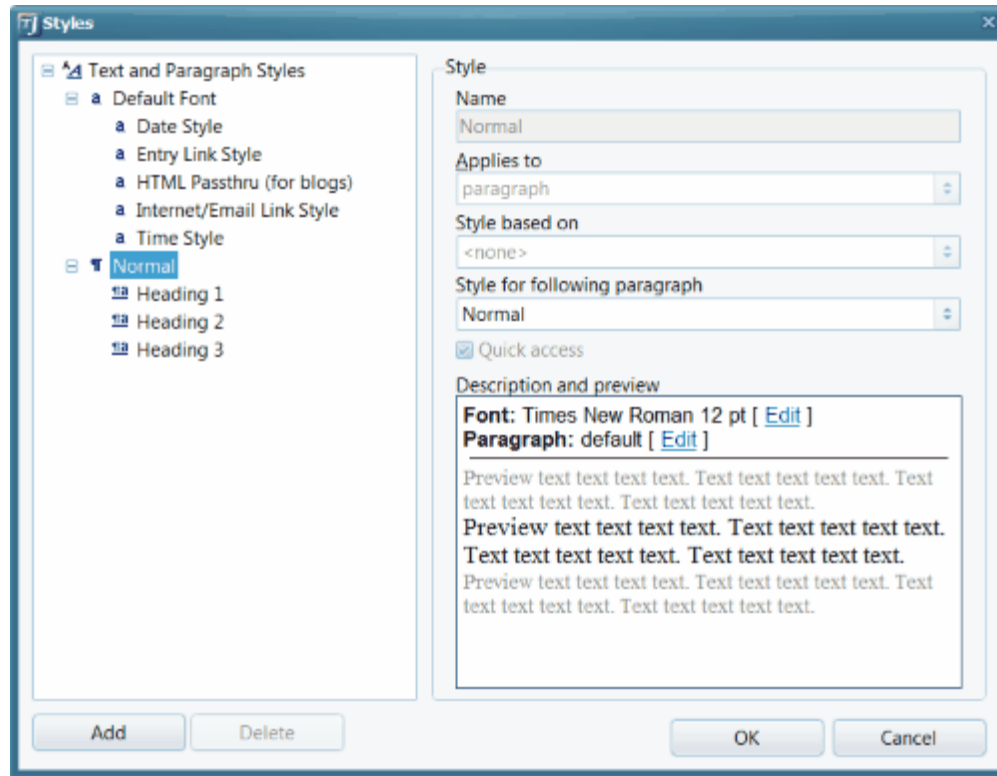
### Apply Normal Style (retain formatting)

Select a block of text, then click on the **Format** menu and choose "**Apply Normal Style (retain formatting)**". Hot-key: **Ctrl+Shift+<spacebar>**

This command sets the block of text to the normal style, but any text formatting, like **bold**, *italic*, and so on is retained.

### 5.13.1 Adding New Styles

To create new text styles, click on the **Format** menu and choose "**Styles...**"



Click on "**Add**" to create a new style.

If you wish to create a new style based on an existing style, click on the existing style first, then click on "Add".

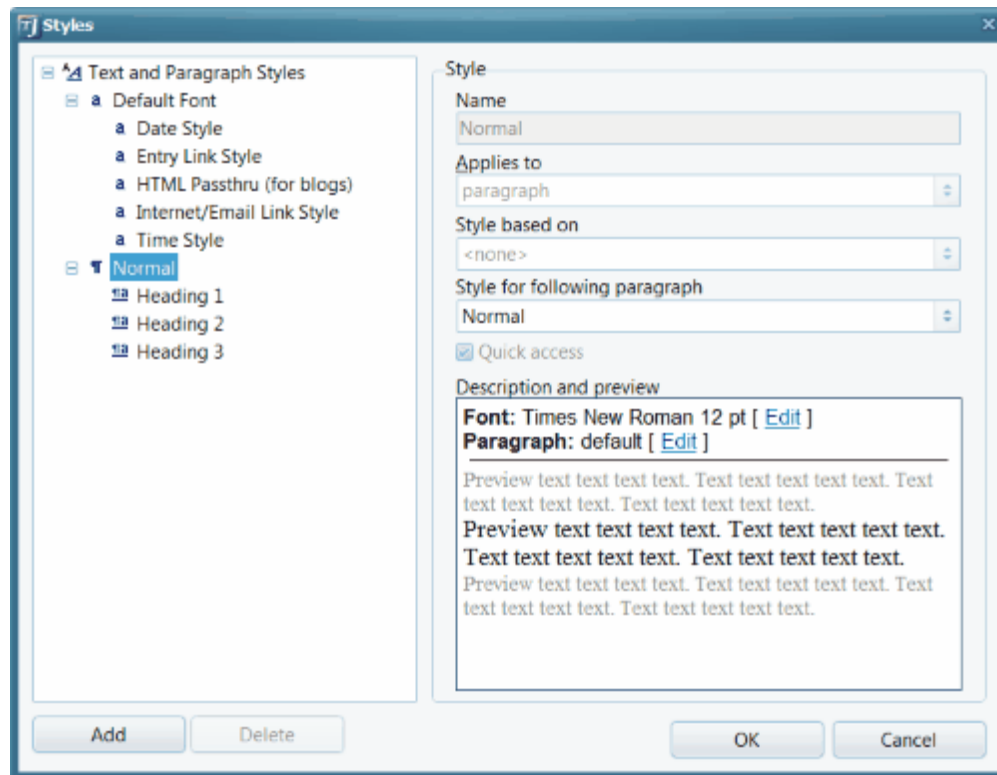
There are two main types of styles: text styles and paragraph styles.

Text styles only affect the font and character formatting.

Paragraph styles can affect both font and character formatting, and paragraph formatting. For example, Heading 1 sets the font to Arial 16 pt and bold, but also sets the paragraph's before and after spacing.

### 5.13.2 Editing Styles

To edit your styles, click on the **Format** menu and choose "**Styles...**"



You can see your existing styles listed (with details) under "Text and Paragraph Styles".

Click on the style you want to edit.

[The many options available for styles are described here.](#)

NOTE: If you change the name of an existing style, all entries in all categories will need to be processed. This could take a few minutes if you have a lot of entries.

## Editing Standard Styles

You can edit The Journal's built-in "standard" styles. The standard styles are:

- **Date style** - the style used with the Insert Date command.
- **Entry Link Style** - how entry links are displayed.
- **Internet/Email Link Style** - how internet/email links are displayed.
- **Time style** - the style used with the Insert Time command.

Changes to these styles will be reflected throughout your categories and entries.

It is also possible to create new styles based on the standard styles. Click on the style to select it, then click on "Add". That will create a new style based on the existing style. In the new style, you can override the font and other settings.

### 5.13.3 Style Options

#### Name

Every style must have a unique name. You cannot change the name of the standard styles (e.g., "Date Style").

**Applies to**

A style can apply to either the text (character formatting), paragraph, or both.

**Text** styles only affect the font/character formatting: font face, font size, and so on.

**Paragraph** styles affect the spacing, tabs, alignment, and so on.

**Text and paragraph** styles can affect everything.

**Style based on**

This is the "parent" style. A style inherits all the text and/or paragraph settings of its parent, but these can be overridden.

**Style for following paragraph**

This is the style that will be applied when you create a new paragraph by pressing ENTER. Heading styles, for example, all revert to the Normal style when you press ENTER.

**Hot-Key**

Up to 10 styles can be assigned a hot-key. The available hot-keys are Ctrl+1, Ctrl+2, up to Ctrl+0.

If you apply a hot-key that has already been assigned, the new assignment will override the old.

**Description and preview**

This displays a summary of the styles font, paragraph, and other settings, and also shows a preview of how the style will appear in the editor.

Click on the "Edit" link to edit those settings for the style. Click on the "Reset" link to remove all changes to the style and reset it the default (or its parent style settings).

## 5.14 Tables

The Journal entries can include tables with a variable number of rows and columns. More than simple grids, each table cell can contain formatted text with any number of paragraphs, including images and even other tables. Tables can be nested to any depth. Further, table cells can be merged together to create larger cells, both horizontally and vertically.

Horizontally Merged Cells				
	Vertically Merged Cells			
			A table in a table...	

Tables in The Journal follow the HTML model. In this model, every cell in a table has its own distinct border on all four sides. In addition, the table as a whole has a border, distinct from the cells in the table. You can change this default look, however, and make the tables appear to have a single line border between cells.

Tables and cells can also have background images, and these background images can be centered, tiled, stretched.

The contents of table cells can be aligned vertically (to the top, bottom or middle of the cell), as well as horizontally (left, right, and centered).

Another advantage of the HTML table model is that widths of columns are calculated based on the widths of individual cells. Widths of cells (and the table as a whole) can be defined as percentage of the visible editor, or a specific number of pixels. The height of cells can be set to match the content of the cells, or can be set to a specific number of pixels.

And, of course, you can change the width and height of the table and cells with the mouse.

#### 5.14.1 Using Tables

There are many uses for [tables](#)! One of those is demonstrated in the sample template: "Food Log".

Food Log				
Sunday 19 Sep, 2004				
Time	Food	Amount	Total Calories	Fat Calories
5:31 PM	Chips & Salsa	5 chips		

Uses for tables:

- Arranging information in an easy-to-reference grid.
- Controlling text and image layout.

#### Adding a Row to a Table

To add a row to a table (like the Food Log):

1. Click on a cell in the last row of the table.
2. Click on the **Table** menu, **Insert** sub-menu, and choose **Insert Row Below**.

## Merging Table Cells

To merge table cells together:

1. Select the table cells you want to merge.
2. Click on the **Table** menu and choose **Merge Cells**.

## Using Tables for Text Layout

You can use tables to control the layout of text and pictures. For example, you can use a table to put text beside a picture.

1. Click on the **Table** menu, **Insert** sub-menu, and choose **Insert Table...**
2. **Number of Columns:** 2
3. **Number of Rows:** 1
4. **Size Table Manually:** 100 percent
5. Click on the left table cell.
6. Insert the image.
7. Use the mouse to resize the left table cell to fit the image.
8. Click on the right table cell.
9. Enter the text to be beside the image.

## Hiding a Table's Borders

1. Click on the table.
2. Click on the **Table** menu and choose **Table Properties...**
3. Click on **Table Border...**
4. **Border Type:** None
5. Click on **Cell Borders...**
6. **Border Type:** None

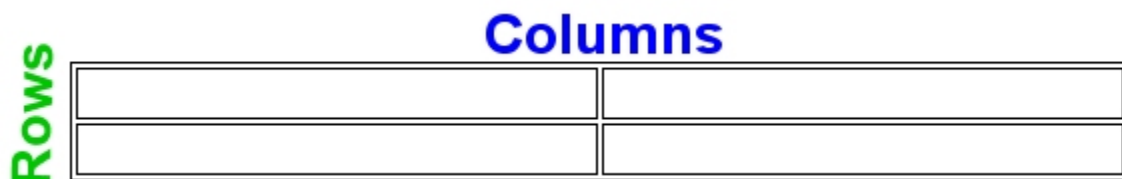
### 5.14.2 Insert Table

#### Number of Columns

The number of cells across the table (left-to-right).

#### Number of Rows

The number of cells down the table (top-to-bottom).




## Table Layout

**Autosize** - The table is created as wide as the entry editor, with all columns the same size.



**Size Table to Fit Window** - The table is created as if you had entered "Size Table Manually" as "100% percent".

**Size Table Manually** - You can set the table width to be a set number of "Pixels" or a "Percent" of the entry editor window.

### Table Properties...

Click here to adjust the [properties](#) the table will be created with: fill color, cell padding, borders, and so on.

### Remember Table Size & Properties for New Tables?

If checked, the current settings are remembered for the next time you insert a table.

#### 5.14.3 Table Properties

To set or change a table's properties:

1. Click on any cell of the table.
2. Click on the **Table** menu, bring up the **Select** sub-menu, and choose **Select Table**.
3. Click on the **Table** menu and choose **Table Properties...**

### Width

A table's width can be set one of 3 ways:

- As a percentage of the width of the document entry editor ("Percent").
- As a specific number of screen pixels ("Pixels").
- Using the mouse to click-and-drag the table wider or narrower ("Manual").

### Fill Color

Tables can be either "Transparent" (showing the color of the entry), or any color of your choice. The table's fill color is the default fill color of all of the table's cells (though each cell can have its own color; see [Table Cell Properties](#)).

### Cell Padding

Cell padding is the amount of space (in screen pixels) between the border of the table cell, and the contents of the cell.

### Cell Spacing

Cell spacing is the amount of space (in screen pixels) between the border of the table and the border of the cells. It is also the amount of space between the individual cells.

Cell spacing can be broken down into vertical spacing between the table border and the cells, horizontal spacing between the table border and the cells; and vertical and horizontal spacing between individual cells. You can adjust these values by clicking on More... on the Table Properties form.

### Image...

A table can have a background image that is shown "behind" the table cells. The image can be tiled, centered, or stretched.

### Table Border...

You can set the color and highlight color of the table's border. You can turn off the border completely, or have it displayed as sunken, raised, or flat.

### Cell Borders...

You can set the color and highlight color of the table's cell borders. You can turn off the cell borders completely, or have them displayed as sunken, raised, or flat.

### Keep Table on a Single Page

The table will not be printed on multiple pages.

### Count of Heading Rows

If the table is printed on two or more pages, these first rows of the table will be repeated as a header on all pages.

See also:

[How do I make my tables look like those in MS Word/WordPerfect/Etc?](#)

[Table Row Properties](#)

[Table Cell Properties](#)

#### 5.14.4 Table Row Properties

To set or change the properties of a row of a table:

1. Click on a cell in the row you want to change.
2. Click on the **Table** menu, bring up the **Select** sub-menu, and choose **Select Row**.
3. Click on the **Table** menu and choose **Table Properties...**
4. Bring up the **Row** tab.

### Vertical Alignment

The vertical alignment of a table row can be set to either top (the default), center, or bottom.

This setting can be overridden at the cell level.

See also:

[Table Properties](#)

[Table Cell Properties](#)

### 5.14.5 Table Cell Properties

To set or change the properties of a row of a table:

1. Click on a cell in the row you want to change.
2. Click on the **Table** menu, bring up the **Select** sub-menu, and choose **Select Cell**.
3. Click on the **Table** menu and choose **Table Properties...**
4. Bring up the **Cells** tab.

#### Preferred Width

This is the preferred width for the cell(s), in pixels or percents of table width. Cells can be wider than this value, if required to display its contents without overlapping.

#### Height at Least

This is the minimum height for the cell(s), in pixels. Cells can be taller than this value, if required to show all its contents.

#### Fill Color

This is the background color of the cell(s). This overrides the fill color of the table.

#### Image...

A table cell can have a background image that is shown "behind" the cell. The image can be tiled, centered, or stretched to fit the cell.

#### Vertical Alignment

The vertical alignment of a table cell can be set to either top (the default), center, bottom, or default. If set to default, the cell uses its row's vertical alignment.

See also:


[Table Properties](#)

[Table Row Properties](#)

## 5.15 Templates

Templates allow you to use standard forms or blocks of text in your entries. Writing and journaling prompts, worksheets and forms, and "boilerplate" text are all possible with templates.

A template is either "simple" or "enhanced". Simple templates are inserted without any processing, exactly as they were created. Any loose-leaf entry can be a simple template. Template entries are

displayed in the entry tree with a red "T" (  ) beside their name.

See [Simple Templates](#) and [Creating Simple Templates](#) for more information.

Enhanced templates provide many more options. Enhanced templates can be used to "create" entry text that is then inserted into the current entry. An enhanced template can have one or more "sections" that

can be selected (at random or in sequence). An enhanced template can use other templates (simple or enhanced) or even files external to The Journal.

See [Enhanced Templates](#) and [Creating Enhanced Templates](#) for more information.

## Inserting a Template

Inserting a template is the same, whether it is simple or enhanced. You choose **Insert Template** from the **Insert** menu (or from the right-click context menu) and then select the template you want. The selected template is then added to the current entry.

## Default Entry Template

Each category can have a "default entry template".

The default entry template will be inserted into new entries.

**To set the default entry template for a category:**

1. Right-click on the category tab and choose "Category Properties..."
2. Bring up the "Entry" tab.
3. Select the "Default Entry Template" from the list of available templates.

### 5.15.1 Simple Templates

Any loose-leaf entry can be a simple template.

When a simple template is inserted with **Insert Template**, the entire template entry is copied. All text formatting is preserved.

To have an entry appear as a template in the **Insert Template** list, first select the entry. Then click on the **Entry** menu, and choose **Template Entry**.

See [Creating Simple Templates](#) for more information.

### 5.15.2 Enhanced Templates

Enhanced templates are much more than just a text entry.

An enhanced template can have multiple "sections". When the template is inserted, only a single section is selected and inserted into the entry. Which section is selected depends on how the template is setup. It could be a random section, or the next section in the sequence.

With an enhanced templates ability to pull in other templates, simple or enhanced, they significantly extend the "boilerplate" features of templates.

In addition, enhanced templates can use "scripting", such as VBScript or JavaScript, to provide even more power. Scripting can prompt the user for information, or control the text that is ultimately returned.

Example uses of enhanced templates:

- Writing exercises, either in sequence or random
- Journaling exercises
- Inspirational quotes

- Auto-generated notes and letters
- Role-playing game (RPG) charts and tables

See also:

[Creating Enhanced Templates](#)

[Enhanced Template Tags](#)

[Enhanced Template Script Variables](#)

### 5.15.3 Enhanced Template Tags

**<TEMPLATE {METHOD="method"} {SCOPE="scope"} {USE="useLanguage"} {UNFORMATTED} {GLOBALVARSPACE="spaceName"}></TEMPLATE>**

This tag must be the first non-whitespace of an extended template.

A single entry can include only one template.

Text in the document that is external to (follows) any defined templates is ignored.

METHOD specifies the default access method of the template. If unspecified, the default access method is "sequence". Valid default access methods are "sequence" and "random".

SCOPE specifies how the "sequence" default access method stores the current point in the sequence. Valid default scopes are "global" and "category". If no scope is specified, then "global" is used.

USE specifies the default "scripting language" used by <DECLARE> and <EXECUTE> tags. If not specified, the default scripting language is "VBScript". Other supported scripting languages are "JavaScript", "PerlScript", and "PythonScript". VBScript and JavaScript are usually available so long as you have Internet Explorer 4 or higher installed on your PC. The availability of PerlScript and PythonScript is beyond the scope of this document. Generally, you will need to download and install special software to use those.

If UNFORMATTED is specified, the selected section of the template is forced to be unformatted. This overrides any formatting specified in the section.

GLOBALVARSPACE creates a "named" set of global variables. This named set of global variables is then available to any other template that uses it, as well. That is, global variables can then be used to store data between templates.

**<INCLUDE {ENTRY="entryName" {CATEGORY="entryCategoryName"} {UNFORMATTED}}/>**

**<INCLUDE {FILE="fileName" {UNFORMATTED}}/>**

**<INCLUDE {URL="urlText" {UNFORMATTED}}/>**

An included entry is specified external to any sections. By convention, included entries are generally listed after any <DECLARE>'s with defined functions.

CATEGORY is used to include entries in other categories. If not specified, the entry must be within the current category.

Any <DECLARE>'s in the included entry are treated as though they were declared in the including template.

<SECTION>'s in included entries are added to the template according to their order in the included entry. Included entries can be specified before, after, between, and so on, sections that are in the "top level" template.

If an included entry includes other templates (and so on), the sub-includes will be handled recursively.

Duplicate entry includes, at the top level and within a <SECTION>, will be ignored.

**<INCLUDE FILE...>** is used to pull text (with or without formatting) into a template or <SECTION>. The file is assumed to be text or text-with-markup. If no path is specified, the file will be looked for in the active folder and then the default Windows path.

If the file has a .TXT extension, it is assumed that it will be unformatted text.

If the file has a .RTF extension, it is assumed to be rich text. If UNFORMATTED is specified, the file will be included without formatting.

**<INCLUDE URL...>** is used to pull the contents of a URL into a template or <SECTION>. The URL can specify a Web page, or an image.

<INCLUDE> can be used externally to <SECTION>'s, as well as within <SECTION>'s. The inserted text will replace the entire <INCLUDE ... /> tag.

<INCLUDE>'s external to a <SECTION> will be processed every time the template is accessed.

<INCLUDE>'s internal to a <SECTION> will only be processed if that <SECTION> is selected.

If the included file causes incorrect formatting, or otherwise causes an error, accessing the template will cause an error.

## **<DECLARE {USE="useLanguage"}></DECLARE>**

The <DECLARE> tag is used to define functions, procedures, and "global" variables that can be called or accessed in other parts of the template.

<DECLARE>'s must be external to any <SECTION>'s. Thus, it is convention to place all <DECLARE>'s at the beginning of the template.

An error in a DECLARE, for instance a syntax error in declaring a function or variable, will halt the template.

Standard functions and procedures can be declared in a template with no sections. This template can then be included in other templates. This allows a certain amount of "code re-use".

Variables declared in a <DECLARE> can be accessed by any <EXECUTE> in the template. However, the value of the variable is not maintained from one <EXECUTE> to another.

If a template includes different <DECLARE>'s with different USE attributes, then each different scripting language will have its own "run state". Elements declared for one scripting language will not be available for use in other scripting language <DECLARE>'s or <EXECUTE>'s.

## **<EXECUTE {USE="useLanguage"}></EXECUTE>**

The `<EXECUTE>` tag allows the template to perform some processing as part of processing.

`<EXECUTE>`'s external to a section will all be executed prior to accessing any section of the template. Template-level `<EXECUTE>`'s can return a block of text that is embedded in the template. Thus, these `<EXECUTE>`'s can selectively add `<INCLUDE>`'s, `<DECLARE>`'s, and so on to the template.

`<EXECUTE>`'s can also be used inside sections. In that case, the `<EXECUTE>` is considered to have a string-type result value (called "Result") that will be inserted into the section when the script is finished. The text formatting of the initial `<EXECUTE>` tag will be applied to the inserted text. The inserted text will replace everything between and including the `<EXECUTE>` and `</EXECUTE>`. Processing of the template will begin again at the first position replaced. Thus, a `<EXECUTE>` could create further tagging to be processed.

There are global variables that can be accessed from any `<EXECUTE>`, and any changes to those variables are kept. These globals can hold just any kind of data. "Global[nn]", where nn specifies an index into the global array.

An error in an `EXECUTE`, for instance a syntax error, will halt the template.

### **`<SECTION {ID="id"} {BACKGROUNDIMAGE="userImageName"}></SECTION>`**

The section's ID can be a single integer, or a range of integers. A range is specified as "nn-mm", and includes the values nn and mm. mm must be greater than or equal to nn. By convention, sections are arranged in ID order, least to greatest.

If no ID is specified for a section, then it is given an automatic ID relative to its position in the list of sections in the template, based on the last ID specified. So if the first section ID was given as 100, the next would automatically be 101, and so on.

It is possible for "blank" spots to occur in a template, where there is no section tied to a particular ID. If one of these blank sections is accessed by ID, nothing is returned.

Specifying a section which duplicates an earlier ID, or overlaps with a range specified for an earlier section, will cause an error when accessing the template.

The section's `BACKGROUNDIMAGE` attribute overrides the template entry's background image (if there is one). The background image must have been loaded into User Images (User menu, User Images...). NOTE: You must use the full image name, including any extension (example: `BACKGROUNDIMAGE="journalpage.jpg"`).

If no user image by the given name exists, no image is used.

### **`<SELECT ENTRY="entryName" {CATEGORY="entryCategoryName"} {METHOD="method"} {SCOPE="scope"} {DATA="data"}} {UNFORMATTED}/>`**

The `SELECT` tag can only be used within a section.

`CATEGORY` is used to select templates in other categories. If not specified, the template must be within the current template's category.

`METHOD` specifies the how the template picks a section to return. If unspecified, the default access method is "sequence". Valid access methods are "sequence", "id", and "random".

"random" access uses each sections ID range to determine that sections chance of being selected. So a section with a wide ID range has a better chance of being selected than a section with a single ID.

SCOPE specifies how the "sequence" access method stores the current point in the sequence. Valid scopes are "global", "template", and "category". Default scope is "template".

"global" scope means that current sequence value is stored for the template being called. "template" scope means that the sequence value is stored for the calling template and the template being called. "category" means that the sequence value is stored for the calling category and the template being called.

The DATA attribute is used by the "id" access method.

If UNFORMATTED is specified, then any formatting in the returned section is ignored.

**<DATE {FORMAT="dd/mm/yy"}/>**  
**<ENTRYDATE {FORMAT="dd/mm/yy"}/>**  
**<TIME {FORMAT="hh:nn:ss"}/>**

The text formatting of the date or time tag will be used on the inserted text.

DATE inserts the current system date. ENTRYDATE uses the date of the entry where the template is being inserted into. In loose-leaf categories, ENTRYDATE functions the same as DATE.

If no FORMAT is specified, the Windows default setting for the date or time will be used.

The FORMAT's available include:

**d, dd** Day of the month, example: 3, 03  
**ddd** Short day name, example: Tue  
**dddd** Long day name, example: Tuesday  
**m, mm** Month number, example: 6, 06  
**mmm** Short month name, example: Jun  
**mmmm** Long month name, example: June  
**yy** Short year, example: 03  
**yyyy** Long year, example: 2003  
**h, hh** Hour of the day, example: 7, 07  
**nn** Minutes of the time  
**ss** Seconds of the time  
**am/pm** Adds "am" or "pm" to the time.

**&lt;** - replaced with '<' during section access.

**&gt;** - replaced with '>' during section access.

**&quot;** - replaced with '"' (double quote) during section access.

**<LITERAL VALUE="string"/>**

The literal quoted string is embedded in the template section replacing the LITERAL tag.

**<CURSOR/>**



After the template is inserted, the editor's input cursor is placed here.

NOTE: If there are multiple <CURSOR/> tags, they will all be replaced with blank strings, and the cursor will be placed at the last one.

#### 5.15.4 Enhanced Template Script Variables

The Journal provides some variables that can be used within the <DECLARE> and <EXECUTE> tags.

##### Result

If an <EXECUTE> is used inside a section the <EXECUTE> is considered to have a string-type result value (called "Result") that will be inserted into the section when the script is finished. The text formatting of the initial <EXECUTE> tag will be applied to the inserted text. The inserted text will replace everything between and including the <EXECUTE> and </EXECUTE>. Processing of the template will begin again at the first position replaced. Thus, a <EXECUTE> could create further tagging to be processed.

##### Globalnn

"Globalnn", where nn specifies an index 1-1000 into the global array. Example variable names are: Global1, Global23, Global456, etc.

There are global variables that can be accessed from any <DECLARE> or <EXECUTE>, and any changes to those variables are kept. These globals can hold just about any kind of data.

Normally, global variables are cleared after each use of a template. Specifying a GLOBALVARSPACE, though, in the <TEMPLATE> tag, creates a set of global variables that are available from one use of a template to the next, and even available to other templates. The variables in a GLOBALVARSPACE are available until the user logs out of The Journal.

##### RandomValue

The "RandomValue" variable is read-only. RandomValue is a random floating-point value where:  $0 < \text{RandomValue} < 1$

This variable is provided because the random functions of some scripting languages are inadequate.

#### 5.15.5 Creating Simple Templates

Any loose-leaf entry can be a [simple template](#).

##### Creating a Simple Template

Here are the steps to create a simple template:

1. Create a loose-leaf entry to be the template (press **F9**, or **Entry** menu, **Create New Entry** sub-menu, **Document**). The "**Templates**" category can be used for this, or any other loose-leaf/notebook category you choose. Name the entry "My Template".

2. Enter the text to use for the template. Here is some example template text (between the "- - - - -"):


- - - - -

Today I accomplished:

This made me happy today:

This made me angry today:

- - - - -

3. Now, to mark the entry as a template, click on the **Entry** menu, and choose **Template Entry**. The entry's icon in the entry tree will now show a red "T" (  ).

## Using "My Template"

1. Bring up the current date in your **"Daily Journal"** category, and scroll to the end of the entry, if necessary.

2. Click on the Insert menu, and bring up the Insert Template sub-menu. Choose **"My Template"**.

This will insert the text of "My Template" into the active entry.

### 5.15.6 Creating Enhanced Templates

This section will provide a short tutorial in creating enhanced templates.

Like a [simple template](#), an [enhanced template](#) must be a loose-leaf/notebook entry marked as a template. However, while a simple template consists of whatever text is in its entry, an enhanced template must be properly constructed using the [enhanced template tags](#).

An enhanced template can have one or more "sections", any one of which can be chosen when the template is inserted. A specific section can be chosen, or one can be chosen at random, or in sequence, depending on how the enhanced template is used.

Enhanced templates can "include" sections from other templates or even other entries in other categories. Combined with the ability to execute ActiveScript scripting commands, enhanced templates are a powerful feature of The Journal.

In the "Templates" category that is created for you automatically, there are a small number of enhanced templates. Those provide some examples of what can be done. Feel free to refer to those as you read on, to see how they work and how they are structured.

Next: [Enhanced Template Basics](#)

#### 5.15.6.1 Enhanced Template Basics

Enhanced templates use HTML- and XML-style "tags". These tags define the template itself, the sections within the template, and handle scripting. The following example shows the simplest form of an enhanced template:

```
<TEMPLATE>
<SECTION>Template text is here, as a section.</SECTION>
</TEMPLATE>
```

### The <TEMPLATE> and <SECTION> Tags

As you can see in the example above, an enhanced template begins with a `<TEMPLATE>` tag, and ends with a `</TEMPLATE>`. The `<TEMPLATE>` must be the first text in the entry. Any text that follows the `</TEMPLATE>` tag is ignored.

The `<SECTION>` and `</SECTION>` tags mark the actual text to provide when the template is inserted. If you were to create an enhanced template from the above example, when you inserted the template, you would get:

Template text is here, as a section.

This may seem like a long way around to get to something that can be easily handled with [simple templates](#)--and it is. So now we will talk about a couple useful things you can do with enhanced templates.

### Some Useful Tags: `<DATE/>` and `<TIME/>`

Suppose you want a way to quickly log when you eat, and what you eat. You don't want to create a whole new category for this, preferring to just enter the information in your normal "Daily Journal" entries. Here's a template that you can insert when you need it:

```
<TEMPLATE>
<SECTION>
Food Log for <DATE FORMAT="mm/dd/yy"/> @ <TIME FORMAT="hh:nn">
Food/Description    Servings  Calories
</SECTION>
</TEMPLATE>
```

When you insert this template, the `<DATE/>` tag will be replaced with the current date, using the format specified, and the `<TIME/>` tag will be replaced with the current time, again using the format specified. Here's an example:

```
Food Log for 06/03/03 @ 07:47pm
Food/Description    Servings  Calories
```

Then you could type in the name of the food you ate, and then tab over to fill in the number of servings and the calories.

The "FORMAT=..." part of the tags is called an attribute. Attributes usually take the form of:

```
ATTRIBUTENAME="Attribute Value"
```

That is, the name of the attribute is specified in all caps, followed by an equal sign (=), and then the value of the attribute, enclosed in double quotes.

To see all of the available FORMAT options for `<DATE/>` and `<TIME/>`, [click here](#).

NOTE: Typically, tags and attributes are entered in ALL CAPS, but this is only a convention. Enhanced template tags and attributes can be either lowercase, UPPERCASE, or MixedCase.

**Next:** [Enhanced Template Sections Part 1](#)

### 5.15.6.2 Enhanced Template Sections

You have been shown the basic structure of an enhanced template, using `<TEMPLATE></TEMPLATE>` and `<SECTION></SECTION>` pairs, and even how to use attributes to modify a tag like `<DATE/>`. We will now talk about enhanced template sections in more detail.

#### Multiple Sections

As we have already covered, the `<SECTION>` and `</SECTION>` tags mark the actual text to provide when the template is inserted. Unlike a simple template, however, where the entire entry is used every time, an enhanced template can have more than one section, and which one is used can be determined a couple of different ways. For example:

```
<TEMPLATE METHOD="random">
<SECTION>How are you today?</SECTION>
<SECTION>What's up?</SECTION>
<SECTION>How are you feeling today?</SECTION>
<SECTION>Have you won the lottery yet?</SECTION>
<SECTION>Do you know where your towel is?</SECTION>
<SECTION>What's the weather like?</SECTION>
<SECTION>How is work?</SECTION>
</TEMPLATE>
```

This enhanced template, when inserted, will randomly choose from one of the above questions. Only one of them will be used each time the template is inserted.

Note the `METHOD` attribute of the `<TEMPLATE>` tag. This attribute specifies how the template will choose from the available sections. There are two possible `METHOD`'s:

**random**     Choose a random section  
**sequence**    Choose the next section in sequence

If the `METHOD` attribute had been set to "sequence" instead of "random", then the first time you inserted the template, you would get:

How are you today?

The second time you would get:

What's up?

And so on. The sequence will repeat once it reaches the last available section.

While the example given is somewhat contrived, it's not too different from the various Writing Prompt templates in the "Templates" category.

#### Section Formatting

A section will pull the text, with whatever font or formatting it may have, from the end of the `<SECTION>` tag to the beginning of the `</SECTION>` tag. So if the section text has **bold**, or *italic*, or even **different fonts**, this will be inserted, as well. This includes paragraph formatting, like indentation and hard returns.

The example above, with the different greetings, for instance, will insert the greeting at the current cursor position in the active entry. Afterward, the cursor will be position immediately after the last character in the greeting. If, instead, you wanted a blank line after the greeting, you would need to add that to the section, like this:

```
<SECTION>How are you today?
</SECTION>
```

If you wanted two blank lines after the greeting, you would do this:

```
<SECTION>How are you today?

</SECTION>
```

And, maybe you want a blank line before the greeting, to separate it from the preceding text. In which case, you would do this:

```
<SECTION>
How are you today?

</SECTION>
```

You can override the formatting of all sections by using the UNFORMATTED attribute of the <TEMPLATE> tag. This will force the text of the sections to be treated as simple text, with no formatting such bold, italic, or whatever. Paragraph formatting will also be stripped off, though not hard returns/line breaks used to separate paragraphs. This is how the above example would be changed:

```
<TEMPLATE METHOD="random" UNFORMATTED>
...
```

Next: [Enhanced Template Scripting](#)

### 5.15.6.3 Enhanced Template Scripting

With an understanding of enhanced template sections, we now turn our attention to one of the more powerful aspects of enhanced templates: scripting. With scripting, you can create sophisticated functions and use them when processing the enhanced template.

Warning: This discussion of scripting in enhanced templates assumes that you are familiar with basic programming techniques. This is not a tutorial about any particular scripting language. It only shows how scripting can be used in The Journal.

Enhanced templates can use ActiveScript languages such as VBScript, JavaScript, and so on. Any ActiveScript language that is installed on your computer can be used.

### Within a Section or Outside of a Section

Scripts in enhanced templates can be either inside of a section (between the <SECTION></SECTION> tags) or outside of any section. The biggest difference between those two cases is:

1. Script within a section is only executed when that section is selected. The results of the script, if any, may be added to the text of the section when it is inserted into the active entry.
2. Script that is external to any section is executed every time the enhanced template is processed, before any section is selected.

## The <EXECUTE> Tag

Script commands are always bracketed by the <EXECUTE> tag, and it's trailing </EXECUTE>. Everything between those tags is considered to be part of the script.

The default scripting language is VBScript. You can override this with the USE attribute. For example:

```
<EXECUTE USE="JavaScript">  
// JavaScript commands here...  
</EXECUTE>
```

If you specify a language with the USE attribute, that language must be available. Otherwise, the script will not run. For simplicity, VBScript will be used in the examples given in the rest of this tutorial.

## Global Script Variables

For script that is executed outside of a section, the only way to hold onto any results is with the global variables provided.

There 1000 global variables available, and they can contain just about any type of value you choose (number, string, etc.). You access them within your script commands like so:

```
<EXECUTE>  
...  
Globalnn='This String'  
...  
</EXECUTE>
```

Or:

```
<EXECUTE>  
...  
if Globalnn >= 18 then  
...  
</EXECUTE>
```

Where "nn" is some number from 1-1000. Thus, you could have "Global1" or "Global23" or "Global456" and so on.

## The Result Variable

The Result variable is a local variable available only to <EXECUTE>'s that are inside of a section. The Result variable can be assigned a value, either a string value or any value that can be easily converted

to a string (like a number). The value of Result is then inserted into the section's text, replacing the entire `<EXECUTE> </EXECUTE>` script.

For example, this section:

```
<SECTION>
Hello, my name is <EXECUTE>Result="David"</EXECUTE>!
</SECTION>
```

Would look like this when inserted:

Hello, my name is David!

## An Example with Scripting

Let's say you want a simple writing exercise that uses a random letter. You could do it like this:

```
<TEMPLATE>

<EXECUTE>
if Int(RandomValue * 2) > 0 then
  Global1="begins"
else
  Global1="ends"
end if
</EXECUTE>

<EXECUTE>
Global2=Chr(65+Int(RandomValue*26))
</EXECUTE>

<SECTION>
Write about a word that <EXECUTE>Result=Global1</EXECUTE> with the letter:
<EXECUTE>Result=Global2</EXECUTE>

</SECTION>

</TEMPLATE>
```

This template randomly selects either "begins" or "ends", and then randomly selects a letter from A-Z. These values are stored in the global variables Global1 and Global2, respectively. The section then combines those variables with some text to create the writing exercise. Examples of the templates output are:

Write about a word that ends with the letter: X

Write about a word that begins with the letter: E

The "RandomValue" variable used in the above scripts is a global variable available in enhanced templates. It returns a random value (x) where:  $0 < x < 1$

**Next:** [Enhanced Template Scripting Part 2](#)

#### 5.15.6.4 Enhanced Template Scripting Part 2

Even with only what we've shown you so far, scripting is obviously a powerful feature. There is more, however. In this topic, we discuss two more tags that take scripting to the next level.

Warning: This discussion of scripting in enhanced templates assumes that you are familiar with basic programming techniques. This is not a tutorial about any particular scripting language. It only shows how scripting can be used in The Journal.

#### The <DECLARE> Tag

The <DECLARE> tag is much like the <EXECUTE> tag, in that it contains script code. Unlike the script in <EXECUTE>'s, however, script in <DECLARE>'s is not run. Instead, the procedures and functions declared are available to be called from within a <EXECUTE>.

You can have more than one <DECLARE></DECLARE> in an enhanced template. If you do have more than one, they are consolidated and treated as a single collection.

One example of using <DECLARE> comes from role-playing games (RPG's). In RPG's many things are based on the roll of a die. The die can have 4 sides (a d4), 6 sides (a d6), 8 sides (a d8), and so on. If you wanted to create a template that would generate RPG items, you would be calculating random numbers frequently. Rather than duplicate that script every time you need it, it is more useful to create it once:

```
<TEMPLATE>
```

```
<DECLARE>
```

```
function RollDie(typeDie)
  RollDie=Int(RandomValue*typeDie)+1
end function
```

```
function RollDice(typeDie,count)
  total=0
  for dd=1 to count
    total=total+RollDie(typeDie)
  next
  RollDice=total
end function
</DECLARE>
```

```
<SECTION>You find <EXECUTE>Result=RollDie(6)</EXECUTE> gold doubloons and
<EXECUTE>Result=RollDice(6,3)</EXECUTE> silver coins.</SECTION>
```

```
</TEMPLATE>
```

So now you can create a collection of common function and procedures with your enhanced template. But what if you want to use the same functions and procedures in other enhanced templates?

#### The <INCLUDE> Tag

The <INCLUDE> tag allows you to access entries within The Journal, or even files outside of The Journal, and "include" them as part of the enhanced template.



Thus, you could create a loose-leaf entry called "Dice Functions" that contains this:

```
<DECLARE>
function RollDie(typeDie)
  RollDie=Int(RandomValue*typeDie)+1
end function

function RollDice(typeDie,count)
  total=0
  for dd=1 to count
    total=total+RollDie(typeDie)
  next
  RollDice=total
end function
</DECLARE>
```

Then you could simply "include" that entry in those enhanced templates where you need those functions:

```
<TEMPLATE>

<INCLUDE ENTRY="Dice Functions">

<SECTION>You find <EXECUTE>Result=RollDie(6)</EXECUTE> gold doubloons and
<EXECUTE>Result=RollDice(6,3)</EXECUTE> silver coins.</SECTION>

</TEMPLATE>
```

Much more compact, and much easier to maintain.

**Next:** [Enhanced Templates Wrapup](#)

#### 5.15.6.5 Enhanced Templates Wrapup

Hopefully this short tutorial has shown you some of what is possible with The Journal's enhanced templates.

With multiple sections to provide some variability, and scripting to add power, enhanced templates can be amazingly versatile and useful.

Again, check out the enhanced templates that are provided in the "Templates" category. See how they do what they do, and feel free to tinker with them.

Learn more here:

[Enhanced Template Tags](#)  
[Enhanced Template Script Variables](#)

## 5.16 Topics

Topics provide another powerful way to organize your thoughts in The Journal. You can set a topic to the text of entry, either as you type it or afterward. You can set as many topics within an entry as you wish, or even tag an entry with as many topics as you want. You can then search entries with a topic or

topics and review them. Searching by topic can be a lot faster than searching for a word, phrase, or collection of words.

The Journal creates a list of more than 60 topics and sub-topics for you, including:

- Business
- Dream
- Family
- Feelings
- Finances
- Friends
- Health
- Hobbies
- And more!

Of course, you can add topics of your own and delete the ones you don't need.

Each topic can be given its own highlight color, to make it easier to see, and you can assign hot-keys to up to 10 topics for ease of use.

When reviewing your entries, topics can be displayed (either one at a time or all at once) or hidden entirely.

[Using Topics](#)

[Apply Topic](#)

[Editing Topics](#)

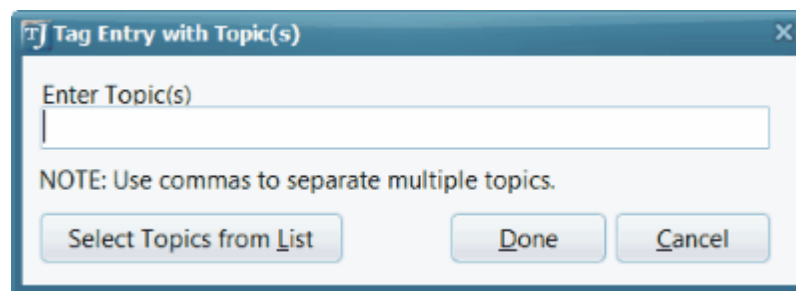
[Searching Topics](#)

### 5.16.1 Using Topics

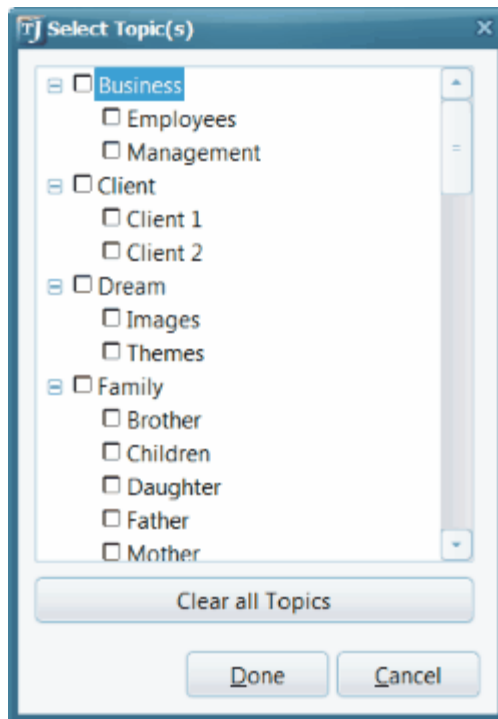
You can use [topics](#) either as you type in your entries, or apply them afterward as you review your entry.

### Tagging an Entry with a Topic

Click on the **Topic** menu and choose "**Tag Entry with Topic...**" (hot-key: Ctrl+Shift+G). This applies the topic or topics that you check to the entire entry.



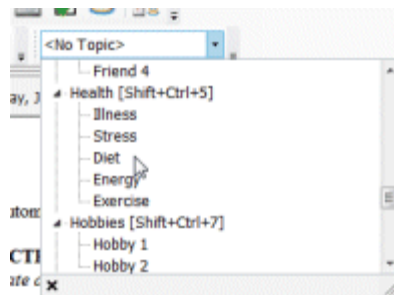
Type the topic or topics (separated by commas) that you wish to tag to the entry. You can also click on "Select Topics from List" to see a list of all topics.



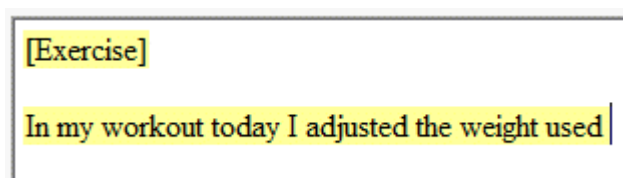
### Using Topics while Making Your Entry

You can also apply topics as you make your entry.

Select the topic you want from the drop-down list on the toolbar.



Once you do that, the name of the topic is inserted (as "[Topic Name]" on a line of its own), the topic's highlight color is made visible, and then whatever you type will be automatically assigned that topic. (NOTE: The topic highlight color isn't printed.)



You can switch to a new topic (or no topic) at any time by selecting the appropriate choice from the topic list. The hot-key for "Apply <No Topic>" is: **Shift+Ctrl+Q**. Also, if you triple-space after a paragraph (hit ENTER three times), then you turn off the active topic.

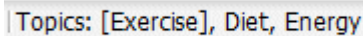
## Applying Topics to Your Entry

To apply topics to text after you have entered it, first select the text you want to tie to the topic, then choose the topic from the list.

A given block of text can have any number of topics assigned to it. The marked text will show up in searches for any of the applied topics.

## Viewing Topics

Topics that have already been tagged to the entry or applied to the entered text are displayed in the status bar below the entry:



Topics: [Exercise], Diet, Energy

Topics applied to entered text are listed first, and shown with [brackets]. Topics that are tagged to the entry are listed next.

By default, blocks of text that have a topic are displayed with their highlight color. This highlight isn't printed. It only serves to show the text with topics. You can change this so that text with topics applied does *\*not\** show the highlight color. Click on the **Topic** menu and choose **"Edit Topics..."** Un-check the option **"Default to 'Show all Topics' in Editor"**.

### 5.16.2 Apply Topic

Click on the **Topic** menu and choose **"Apply Topic..."**

Or, to apply a topic to the entire entry:

Click on the **Topic** menu and choose **"Tag Entry with Topic..."**

Topics that have already been applied to the entry will show as checked.

Check or un-check the topics you want to apply.

**"Clear all Topics"** will un-check all topics in the list.

### 5.16.3 Editing Topics

The Journal creates a list of more than 60 topics and sub-topics for you, but you can change the topics, delete topics you don't need, and add topics of your own.

To edit your topics, click on the **Topic** menu and choose **"Edit Topics..."**

Any topic that you have used is shown as bold in the list of topics.

For explanation of all the available topic options, check out [User Preferences: Topics](#).

### 5.16.4 Merging Topics

Click on the **Topic** menu and choose **"Merge Topics..."**

This form allows you to merge two or more topics into a single topics. Any entries that have the merged topics will be updated.

NOTE: This operation cannot be undone. If you change your mind, you will have to restore from a previous backup.

#### 5.16.5 Searching Topics

Searching by topic can be a lot faster than searching for a particular word or phrase. Because an entry knows which topics have been used, it does not have to examine the entire entry.

To search by topic:

1. Click on the **Topic** menu and choose **"Search Entries by Topic..."**
2. Check the topic(s) you want to search for. NOTE: The topics you have used at least once in an entry are listed first, in alphabetical order. All other topics are listed in alphabetical order following the ones you have used.
3. Click on **"Search"**.

### 5.17 User Interface

#### User Interface FAQ

[How can I customize the look of The Journal \(change the skin\)?](#)

[How do I customize the toolbars?](#)

[What is the hot-key \(keyboard shortcut\) for...?](#)

#### 5.17.1 Customizing the User Interface with Themes

The Journal comes with dozens of pre-created themes.

The quickest way to change the theme is to click on the **View** menu and choose **"Change Theme..."**

You can also change the theme--or turn *off* themes--of The Journal in **"User Preferences..."** (on the **User** menu), on the **"Global"** tab. Use the **"Theme"** sub-tab. To turn "off" themes, select the "Windows" theme.

#### The Journal 6-style Skinning

The Journal 6 used a different set of themes, called "skins". You can use these skins instead of the new themes, if you want.

NOTE: After you active "The Journal 6-style skinning", you will need to close The Journal and restart it.

ALSO NOTE: The colored tabs option (in User Preferences: Category) does not work with The Journal 6-style skinning.

#### 5.17.2 Customizing the User Interface Font

You can select the font, font style (regular, italic, bold or bold italic) and size of font you would like to use in the user interface. This can be useful for those with difficulties seeing small fonts or to change the style of the The Journal.

Click on the **User** menu and choose "**User Preferences...**", and bring up the "**Global**" tab. Bring up the "**Theme**" sub-tab, then click on the button **Edit User Interface Font**.

This font will be used in all areas of the user interface, but it is not the font selected for your Journal entries.

### 5.17.3 Customizing the Menus & Toolbars

The Journal supports full customization of the main menu and all toolbars.

Right-click on the menu or toolbar that you want to customize, and choose **Customize**.

Click on the **Commands** tab to see the list of available commands.

Under "**Categories:**" are groups of commands that roughly correspond to the menus of the same name. For example, the commands available under "Format" are those on the "Format" menu.

Once you select a category, you can click on the menu or toolbar command under "Commands:" and drag it where you want it to appear on the menu or toolbar.

### 5.17.4 Keyboard Shortcuts (Hot-Keys)

Ctrl+Tab	Move to next category tab
Ctrl+Shift+Tab	Move to previous category tab
F1	Context-sensitive help
F2	Rename selected entry
Ctrl+F2	Add a Calendar Charm to selected entry
F3	Repeat last find
F4	Lock/Unlock active entry (prevent/allow editing)
F5	Go to today's entry in category (Calendar Categories only)
Ctrl+F5	Go to date (Calendar Categories only)
Ctrl+Shift+F5	Go to a random entry in the current category (Calendar Categories only)
F6	Set date for all active categories (Calendar Categories only)
F7	Go to previous entry in category
Shift+F7	Go back 1 month (Calendar Categories only)
Ctrl+F7	Go back 1 year (Calendar Categories only)
F8	Go to next entry in category
Shift+F8	Go forward 1 month (Calendar Categories only)
Ctrl+F8	Go forward 1 year (Calendar Categories only)
F9	Create new entry
Shift+F9	Create new root entry
Ctrl+Shift+F9	Create new entry for today (Calendar categories only)
F10	Create new sub-entry
Shift+F10	Bring up entry context menu
F11	Normal editor (no split editing)
Shift+F11	Split Editor Horizontal
Ctrl+F11	Split Editor Vertical
Ctrl+Shift+F11	Full-screen (distraction free) Editor
1	
F12	Save Entry as...
Ctrl+F12	Export Entries...
Ctrl+F	Find text in entry
Ctrl+Shift+F	<a href="#">Search entries</a>
Ctrl+G	Replace text in entry
Ctrl+<spacebar>	Apply default text <a href="#">style</a> to selected text

Ctrl+Shift+<spaceb Apply default text [style](#) to selected text, retaining formatting  
ar>

Ctrl+Delete	Delete word
Ctrl+B	Toggle Bold On/Off
Ctrl+U	Toggle Underline On/Off
Ctrl+I	Toggle Italics On/Off
Ctrl+<dash>	Toggle Strikeout On/Off
Ctrl+[	-1 font size
Ctrl+]	+1 font size
Ctrl+M	Indent paragraph
Ctrl+Shift+M	Unindent paragraph
Ctrl+H	Hanging indent
Ctrl+Shift+L	Toggle bulleting
Ctrl+Shift+N	Toggle numbering
Shift+F10	Bring up entry context menu
Ctrl+Shift+D	Add/edit description of selected image
Ctrl+Shift+Y	Edit layout properties of selected image
Ctrl+L	Align paragraph left
Ctrl+R	Align paragraph right
Ctrl+E	Center paragraph
Ctrl+Shift+K	Block justify paragraph
Ctrl+=	Subscript
Ctrl+Shift+=	Superscript
Ctrl+Shift+H	Edit the current paragraph as right-to-left (for Middle Eastern users)
Ctrl+D	Insert Current Date at cursor
Ctrl+T	Insert Current Time at cursor
Ctrl+Shift+A	Insert Entry Date (date of the active entry) at cursor
Ctrl+Shift+I	Insert Current Timer at cursor
Ctrl+Shift+<dash>	Insert line at cursor
Ctrl+K	Insert Link
Ctrl+Shift+X	Insert To-do (CheckBox)
Ctrl+Shift+B	Backup The Journal
Ctrl+Shift+S	Spell checker
Ctrl+Shift+R	Thesaurus
Ctrl+J	Hide (and optionally Lock) Journal
Ctrl+Alt+J	Activate The Journal (if running)
Ctrl+Shift+J	Open Journal Volume
Ctrl+Shift+U	Switch user (login in as a different user)
Ctrl+Shift+T	Shift focus to date tree
Ctrl+Shift+E	Shift focus to entry
Ctrl+Alt+C	Toggle calendar On/Off
Ctrl+Alt+T	Toggle date tree On/Off
Ctrl+Alt+I	Toggle countdown timer and stopwatch On/Off
Alt+Up	Move Entry Up
Alt+Down	Move Entry Down
Alt+Shift+Up	Promote Entry
Ctrl+Z	Undo changes
Ctrl+Y	Redo changes

Ctrl+Shift+P	Apply topic
Ctrl+Shift+G	Tag entry with topic
Ctrl+Shift+Q	Set selected text to "<No Topic>"

## Editing Keyboard Shortcuts

Many of these keyboard shortcuts can be changed. Click on the **Tools** menu and choose **"Edit Menu/Toolbar Commands..."**

The hot-keys for Styles (Ctrl+1 through Ctrl+0) and Topics (Ctrl+Shift+1 through Ctrl+Shift+0) cannot be changed.

## International Characters

Acute accent: Á, Ê, Í, Ó, Ú, Ý, á, é, í, ó, ú, ý  
Ctrl+Shift+<apostrophe> <letter>

Circumflex: Â, Ê, Î, Ô, Û, â, ê, î, ô, û  
Ctrl+Shift+^ <letter>

Grave accent: À, È, Ì, Ò, Ù, à, è, ì, ò, ù  
Ctrl+` <letter>

Tilde accent: Ã, Ñ, Ò, ã, ñ, õ  
Ctrl+Shift+~ <letter>

Umlaut accent: Ä, Ê, Ì, Ö, Ü, ÿ, ä, ë, ï, ö, ü, ÿ  
Ctrl+Shift+<colon> <letter>

Slashed characters: Ø, ø  
Ctrl+/ <letter>

Cedilla: Ç, ç  
Ctrl+<comma> <letter>

Compound characters: ß, Æ, Œ, æ, œ  
Ctrl+Shift+& s = ß  
Ctrl+Shift+& a = æ  
Ctrl+Shift+& o = œ

### 5.17.5 Keyboard Shortcuts (Hot-Keys) Alphabetically

Ctrl+A	Select All (entire entry)
Ctrl+Shift+A	Insert Entry Date (date of the active entry) at cursor
Ctrl+B	Toggle Bold On/Off
Ctrl+Shift+B	Backup The Journal
Ctrl+C	Copy selection to clipboard
Ctrl+Alt+C	Toggle calendar On/Off
Ctrl+D	Insert Current Date at cursor
Ctrl+Shift+D	Add/edit description of selected image
Ctrl+E	Center paragraph
Ctrl+Shift+E	Shift focus to entry
Ctrl+F	Find text in entry
Ctrl+Shift+F	<a href="#">Search entries</a>



Ctrl+G	Replace text in entry
Ctrl+Shift+G	Tag entry with topic
Ctrl+H	Hanging indent
Ctrl+Shift+H	Edit the current paragraph as right-to-left (for Middle Eastern users)
Ctrl+I	Toggle Italics On/Off
Ctrl+Shift+I	Insert Current Timer at cursor
Ctrl+Alt+I	Toggle countdown timer and stopwatch On/Off
Ctrl+J	Hide Journal
Ctrl+Shift+J	Open Journal Volume
Ctrl+Alt+J	Activate The Journal (if running)
Ctrl+Shift+K	Block justify paragraph
Ctrl+K	Insert Link
Ctrl+L	Align paragraph left
Ctrl+Shift+L	Toggle bulleting
Ctrl+M	Indent paragraph
Ctrl+Shift+M	Unindent paragraph
Ctrl+Shift+N	Toggle numbering
Ctrl+Shift+O	Toggle outline
Ctrl+P	Print
Ctrl+Shift+P	Apply topic
Ctrl+Shift+Q	Set selected text to "<No Topic>"
Ctrl+R	Align paragraph right
Ctrl+Shift+R	Thesaurus
Ctrl+S	Save all changes
Ctrl+Shift+S	Spell checker
Ctrl+T	Insert Current Time at cursor
Ctrl+Shift+T	Shift focus to date tree
Ctrl+Alt+T	Toggle date tree On/Off
Ctrl+U	Toggle Underline On/Off
Ctrl+Shift+U	Switch user (login in as a different user)
Ctrl+V	Paste from clipboard
Ctrl+Shift+V	Paste Special from clipboard
Ctrl+W	Count words in entry or selected text
Ctrl+Shift+W	Count words in the active entry plus the words in all sub-entries
Ctrl+X	Cut selection to clipboard
Ctrl+Shift+X	Insert To-do (CheckBox)
Ctrl+Y	Redo changes
Ctrl+Shift+Y	Edit layout properties of selected image
Ctrl+Z	Undo changes

Ctrl+Tab Move to next category tab

Ctrl+Shift+Tab Move to previous category tab

b

Ctrl+<spacebar Apply default text [style](#) to selected text

>

Ctrl+Shift+<spacebar Apply default text [style](#) to selected text, retaining formatting

>

Ctrl+Delete Delete word

Ctrl+Shift+Insert Paste from clipboard as text

t

Ctrl+<dash> Toggle Strikeout On/Off

Ctrl+Shift+<dash> Insert line at cursor

Ctrl+[ -1 font size

Ctrl+] +1 font size

Ctrl+=	Subscript
Ctrl+Shift+=	Superscript
Alt+Up	Move Entry Up
Alt+Down	Move Entry Down
Alt+Left	Promote Entry
Alt+Right	Demote Entry
Alt+Shift+Left	Back
Alt+Shift+Right	Forward
F1	Context-sensitive help
F2	Rename selected entry
Ctrl+F2	Add a Calendar Charm to selected entry
F3	Repeat last find
F4	Lock/Unlock active entry (prevent/allow editing)
F5	Go to today's entry in category (Calendar Categories only)
Ctrl+F5	Go to date (Calendar Categories only)
Ctrl+Shift+F5	Go to a random entry in the current category (Calendar Categories only)
F6	Set date for all active categories (Calendar Categories only)
F7	Go to previous entry in category
Shift+F7	Go back 1 month (Calendar Categories only)
Ctrl+F7	Go back 1 year (Calendar Categories only)
F8	Go to next entry in category
Shift+F8	Go forward 1 month (Calendar Categories only)
Ctrl+F8	Go forward 1 year (Calendar Categories only)
F9	Create new entry
Shift+F9	Create new root entry
Ctrl+Shift+F9	Create new entry for today (Calendar categories only)
F10	Create new sub-entry
Shift+F10	Bring up entry context menu
F11	Normal editor (no split editing)
Shift+F11	Split Editor Horizontal
Ctrl+F11	Split Editor Vertical
Ctrl+Shift+F11	Full-screen (distraction free) Editor
1	
F12	Save Entry as...
Ctrl+F12	Export Entries...

## Editing Keyboard Shortcuts

Many of these keyboard shortcuts can be changed. Click on the **Tools** menu and choose **"Edit Menu/Toolbar Commands..."**

The hot-keys for Styles (Ctrl+1 through Ctrl+0) and Topics (Ctrl+Shift+1 through Ctrl+Shift+0) cannot be changed.

## International Characters

Acute accent: Á, É, Í, Ó, Ú, Ý, á, é, í, ó, ú, ý  
Ctrl+Shift+<apostrophe> <letter>

Circumflex: Â, Ê, Î, Ô, Û, â, ê, î, ô, û  
Ctrl+Shift+^ <letter>

Grave accent: À, Ê, Ì, Ò, Ù, à, è, ì, ò, ù  
Ctrl+` <letter>

Tilde accent: Ã, Ñ, Ò, ã, ñ, õ  
Ctrl+Shift+~ <letter>

Umlaut accent: Ä, Ë, Ì, Ö, Ü, Ý, ä, ë, ì, ö, ü, ý  
Ctrl+Shift+<colon> <letter>

Slashed characters: Ø, ø  
Ctrl+/ <letter>

Cedilla: Ç, ç  
Ctrl+<comma> <letter>

Compound characters: ß, Æ, Œ, æ, œ  
Ctrl+Shift+& s = ß  
Ctrl+Shift+& a = æ  
Ctrl+Shift+& o = œ

### 5.17.6 Language

To change the user interface language, click on the **View** menu, **Language** sub-menu, and choose the language.

Currently available languages:

- English (United States) (default)
- English (United Kingdom)
- Chinese (People's Republic of China) [\*]
- German
- Russian [\*\*]

[\*] This language shouldn't be used except on Asian-language versions of Windows.

[\*\*] This language works best on Cyrillic-language versions of Windows.

NOTE: The Journal uses Windows Regional settings for many things, like month names, days of the week, and so on. Thus, those types of text are *\*not\** affected by choosing a different language.

### 5.17.7 Journal.INI

Under Windows 7 and Windows 10, the user-editable Journal.INI file can be found here:

**C:\Users\WinUser\AppData\Roaming\The Journal 8\**

Under Windows XP, this is the path:

**C:\Documents and Settings\WinUser\Application Data\The Journal 8\**

### [GlobalOption]

The **[GlobalOption]** section provides access to the following settings:

#### GOShowSplashScreen

If true (=1), show the "splash screen" when starting The Journal. If false (=0), do not show the "splash screen" when starting The Journal.

**GOForceRepair**

If true (=1), force The Journal to repair all [Journal Volumes](#). This option is automatically reset to false (=0) after the forced repair is completed.

**GOInterfaceFontSize**

If set to any positive value, that value is used as the font point size used in the entry date tree and category tabs.

The default font point size is 8. If you would like to increase the font size used, try:

**GOInterfaceFontSize=10**

**GONoCtrlAltHotKeys**

If true (=1), this option turns off the keyboard shortcuts in The Journal that use Ctrl+Alt key combinations. Currently, this only affects the Toggle Calendar (Ctrl+Alt+C) and Toggle Tree (Ctrl+Alt+T) hot-keys.

Some international users (e.g., from Poland) were having problems with the Ctrl+Alt+C hot-key. It prevented them from using a particular accented character.

**GOAlwaysChooseRunAnotherTJSet**

If true (=1), then the user has chosen to always either run another instance of The Journal, or to always \*not\* run another instance, bringing up the active instance.

**GOAlwaysChooseRunAnotherTJ**

If true (=1), then the user can run The Journal as many times as he wants, each time opening a new instance of The Journal.

If false (=0), then The Journal will be limited to a single running instance.

**5.17.8 Command Line Options****-v Specify Journal Volume**

You can specify a Journal Volume to open when you start The Journal. The format is:

**journal7.exe -v VolumeName**

Example: journal7.exe -v Home

If the Journal Volume name includes spaces, then the name must be in quotes.

Example: journal7.exe -v "My Journal"

NOTE: When this command line parameter is present, only the specified Journal Volume is opened. Other Journal Volumes, even those specified as auto-load, will not be opened. You can open those Journal Volumes manually with **File** menu, **Journal Volume** sub-menu, **"Open Journal Volume..."**

**-repair Force Database Repair**

If this command line option is present, The Journal will repair all Journal Volumes when starting. The format is:

**journal7.exe -repair**

### 5.17.9 Miscellaneous Forms

This section describes the options and commands available on The Journal's forms.

#### 5.17.9.1 Calendar Charms

Click on the **Entry** menu and choose "**Entry Calendar Charm...**" (hot-key: **Ctrl+F2**)

Or click on the **Insert** menu and choose "**Insert Calendar Charm...**" (hot-key: **Shift+F2**)

#### To choose a Calendar Charm:

1. Select the **Calendar Charm Collection**.
2. Click on the Charm you want, by clicking on it or using the arrow keys.
3. Click on **Select**.

#### To Remove a Calendar Charm:

1. Click on **Clear**.
2. Click on **Done**.

See also: [Calendar Charms](#)

#### 5.17.9.2 Category Statistics

Click on the **Category** menu and choose "**Category Statistics...**"

This form shows the following information for the active category:

- **# of Entries** - the total number of entries in this category
- **Security Level** - whether the category requires a password or not
- **Shared?** - whether the category is shared; if so, whether it's shared read only or full access
- **Access** - whether the category is read only (no new entries, no editing of entries) or full access
- **Parent Category** - if the category is a sub-category, this is the name of its parent category

#### 5.17.9.3 Change User Password

Click on the **User** menu and select "**Change User Password...**"

You will need to enter your current password (unless you have a blank password) to create a new password. When your current password has been verified, you will be asked to confirm your new password.

The Journal allows passwords of any length.

See [Choosing a Good Password](#) for tips on how to make your password as secure as possible.

### Using a Blank Password

The Journal allows you to have a "blank" password if you want. If you do not want a password, but still want The Journal to "prompt" you to login, a blank password will do that.

When you set your password, just leave the new password blank. Do not type anything.

See also: [How do I reset my lost password?](#)

#### 5.17.9.4 Choose an Action

You will be presented with the **"Choose an Action"** form in a variety of situations. The most frequent cases are:

- You cancel out of a user login prompt and there is no other user logged in.
- The Journal is unable to find or open an expected Journal Volume.

The currently active Journal Volume, if any, is displayed.

You must choose one of these actions to proceed:

#### Open Another Journal Volume

You will be presented with a list of available Journal Volumes. Choose the Journal Volume you want to open.

#### Log in to the Current Journal Volume

This choice will take you back to the user login. There you can choose a user name and enter the password to log in.

#### Create a New Journal Volume

This choice will lead you through the steps necessary to create a new Journal Volume, which you can then open and log into.

#### Restore from a Backup

If you need to restore from a backup, click on this button.

#### Close The Journal

The Journal will close.

#### 5.17.9.5 Choose Category to Import Into

When importing entries from an export file, you will be prompted to choose the correct category to use for the import.

You can only choose a category that is the same type ([calendar](#) or [loose-leaf](#)) as the category that is being imported.

You can also create a new category to receive the import, or you can tell The Journal to auto-create the category. The automatic creation creates the new category based on the import category (same type, name, and so on).

#### 5.17.9.6 Clipboard Viewer

Click on the **Edit** menu and choose "**Clipboard Viewer...**"

The Journal's Clipboard Viewer provides a powerful tool for managing and using the Windows clipboard. You can edit the clipboard contents, or paste them into the currently active entry.

With the "**Auto-Paste to Active Entry**" option, you can have anything that is copied to the Windows clipboard automatically pasted into the active entry. This means you can rapidly collect information from various applications and web pages without having to switch back and forth between The Journal and the source of the information. Just select what you want, and copy it to the clipboard.

#### 5.17.9.7 Countdown Timer

Click on the **View** menu and choose "**Timer**" (hot-key: **Ctrl+Alt+I**).

The Journal's countdown timer can be used in a variety of ways:

- Many writing and journaling exercises want you to "just write" for a set period of time, like 10 minutes.
- For your current writing project, you want to write for an hour every day.
- For any project where you want to work for a period of time, the countdown timer can be set for a matter of seconds, or even hours.

NOTE: When you use the countdown timer, the [stopwatch](#) is disabled. And vice versa. You cannot use both the countdown timer and the stopwatch at the same time.

### Time Remaining

You can set the countdown timer to any time from just 1 second to many hours. You type in the duration you want, and hit ENTER.

#### Setting durations:

**mm** Will set the timer for mm minutes.

**:ss** Will set the timer for ss seconds.

**mm:ss** Will set the timer for mm minutes and ss seconds.

**hh:mm:ss** Will set the timer for hh hours and mm minutes and ss seconds.

While the timer is counting down, you can insert the current timer value into your entry by clicking on the Insert menu and choosing Insert Timer Count.

When the timer reaches 00:00:00, a sound is played to alert you. You can set the sound in [User Preferences](#).



**Start**

Will start the countdown timer. If you have paused the timer, it will resume from its last count.



**Pause**

Will pause the countdown timer.



Reset stops the countdown timer, resetting it to 00:00:00.

#### 5.17.9.8 Delete Users

Click on the **File** menu, **Journal Volume** sub-menu, and choose "**Delete User(s)...**"

You can only delete users within the active [Journal Volume](#).

You will need to enter the password of any users you want to delete.

NOTE: Deleting a user also deletes all categories and entries for that user. Once deleted, a user cannot be recovered. You would need to [restore from a backup](#).

#### 5.17.9.9 Edit Auto Replace Strings

Click on the **User** menu and choose "**User Preferences...**" Bring up the "**Editor**" tab.

You can use the auto-replace feature to simplify your typing. You can create simple strings that are automatically replaced with more complex text as you type them.

### Auto-Replace Strings

This is the list of all auto-replace strings you have created. To edit an auto-replace string, click on it in the list. To create a new auto-replace string, click on New Auto-Replace.

### Replace

This is the sequence of characters that is to be replaced with the text in With. Each replacement string must be unique.

### With

This is the text that is automatically inserted when you type the string in Replace within an entry. This text can be one or more lines long, and can be either formatted or unformatted.

### Use Formatting

Check this option to apply formatting to the With text.

#### 5.17.9.10 Edit Header/Footer

This form is used to edit both headers and footers for users and categories.

Headers and footers are functionally identical, and are configured using the same options. The only difference between them is that one is printed at the top of the page (headers) and one at the bottom of the page (footers).



Formatted text can be used in both headers and footers. This means you can use any TrueType font you have on your PC, you can use **bold**, *italic*, etc., and you can specify that the text be aligned to the left, right, or centered. An empty header or footer will not be printed.

With the use of [Print Macros](#), the text of the header and footer can include pre-defined values such as the page number, the category name, and so on.

See [User Preferences: Printing](#) and [Printing Headers and Footers](#) for more information.

#### 5.17.9.11 Edit Symbol Replace Strings

Click on the **User** menu and choose "**User Preferences...**" Bring up the "**Editor**" tab.

Some symbols are awkward, if not impossible, to type using normal keyboards. The Journal's Symbol Replace feature can help work around this limitation by associating simple sequences with special characters.

Examples:

(c) : ©

(tm) : ™

'e : é

:-) : J

To create a new Symbol Replace sequence, simply click on New. Then type in the sequence of characters, choose the font, and choose the symbol.

### Replace

This is the sequence of characters that is to be replaced with the symbol. Each replacement string must be unique.

### Symbol Font

This is the Windows TrueType font that contains the desired symbol.

Symbol and WingDings fonts contain many command symbols, such as © and J

Special Roman characters, such as é and ä, are genearily supported by any normal Windows TrueType font (such as Arial). For these characters, it is recommended that you use the "<Default>" font option.

### Symbol

Once you have selected the desired Symbol Font (or <Default>), simply choose the character you want.

#### 5.17.9.12 Enter Registration Keys

Click on the Help menu and choose "**Enter Registration Keys...**"

Use this form to enter the Registration Keys you received when you bought The Journal.

The Registration Keys are in the form:

Key 1: YOUR NAME  
Key 2: XXODDSTUFFHEREXX

## Entering Your Registration Keys

Your Registration Keys are case-sensitive, so they must be entered exactly as sent to you. The easiest way to do this is:

1. Select both Registration Keys from the email you were sent and copy them to the Windows clipboard (hot-key: Ctrl+C).
2. In The Journal, click on the **Help** menu and choose "**Enter Registration Keys...**"

### 5.17.9.13 Entry Statistics

Click on the **Entry** menu and choose "**Entry Information & Statistics...**"

## Entry Statistics

This form shows the following information for all entries:

- **Date Created** - the date this entry was originally created
- **Date Last Modified** - the date of the last modification to the entry
- **Date Last Printed** - when the entry was last printed
- **Total Editing Time** - the number of minutes spent editing the entry (this is measured as the time from beginning an addition/modification to the time the entry was saved) \*
- **Revision Number** - the number of times the entry has been modified (all changes on a single date count as 1 revision)

\* For some entries imported from The Journal 3, the total editing time reported may be incorrect.

## Word Count

For document entries, it also displays:

- **Words** - how many words are in the entry
- **Characters (no spaces)** - how many non-whitespace characters are in the entry
- **Characters (with spaces)** - how many total characters are in the entry
- **Paragraphs** - the number of individual paragraphs in the entry (empty paragraphs are not counted)
- **Lines** - the number lines displayed (this number varies as you resize The Journal)

## Entry Changes Log

This tab displays a summary of every time the entry was edited or otherwise changed. The name of the user who made the change is included in the log.

NOTE: Changes/edits that happen within 30 minutes of each other are consolidated into a single change.

**Clear History** - Clicking this button clears all of the current history for the entry, and inserts a history item about the clear. NOTE: This cannot be undone.

#### 5.17.9.14 Find Text...

Click on the **Search** menu and choose **Find Text...** (hot-key: **Ctrl+F**)

Search for text in the current entry.

NOTE: To search in multiple entries across categories, use [Search Entries](#) instead.

#### Text to Find

Enter the word or phrase you want to search for here.

#### 5.17.9.15 Get Web Page

Click on the **Tools** menu and choose **"Get Web Page..."**

Use this form to GET a page from the Web, with all images, and archive it in the active entry.

While most HTML formatting is supported, some formatting options are not supported (example: CSS style sheets are not pulled). Also, characters from some languages may not be imported properly (this will be fixed in a future update).

NOTE: The HTTP GET operation may take a few minutes, as it tries to download all of the images on the page.

#### 5.17.9.16 Go to Date

Click on the **Go** menu and choose **"Go to Date..."** (hot-key: **Ctrl+F5**)

Choose the date you want The Journal's calendar set to.

Type in the date by hand, or use the "drop-down" calendar.

When interpreting typed-in dates, The Journal uses the Windows setting for date format.

#### 5.17.9.17 Handle Dropped File

This form pops up when you drag and drop a Windows file onto an entry.

#### Insert this file into Current Entry

The dropped file will be inserted into the current entry, if possible.

#### Replace Current Entry with this file

The dropped file will replace the current entry.

#### Add this file under Current Entry

The dropped file will be added as a sub-entry under the current entry.

#### Add this file as an Entry

The dropped file is added as an entry at the same level as the current entry.

#### 5.17.9.18 History...

Click on the **Go** menu and choose "**History...**"

This form contains a list of all the entries you have opened during this journaling session.

You can select any of those entries listed and then click on "**Go to Entry**". Or you can double-click a listed entry to open that entry.

#### 5.17.9.19 Login

This is the primary login form of The Journal. Before you can do anything in The Journal, you have to login.

If you need to login to another [Journal Volume](#), press **Cancel** and then choose **Open Another Journal Volume**.

If you want to create a new user, click on **Create New User**.

#### User Name

Select your user name from the list of users.

#### Password

Enter your password.

See also: [How do I reset my lost password?](#)

#### 5.17.9.20 Paragraph Borders & Shading

Click on the **Format** menu and choose "**Paragraph Borders & Background...**"

Use this form to add (or remove) borders and shading to the current paragraph (or all selected paragraphs).

#### Color

This is the color of the border drawn around the paragraph.

#### Width

The width, in screen pixels, of the border lines.

#### Internal Width

This is the spacing between lines (centers of lines) in the border (for double and triple borders).

**Offsets...**

You can control the spacing between paragraph contents and border. Larger positive values increase the spacing. Negative values force border to be inside of paragraph contents.

**Border Type**

You can set the border to be: no border, a single line border, a double line border, a triple line border, a double line border with the inner line thicker, or a double line border the outer line thicker.

**Fill Color**

This is the color of paragraph background.

**Padding...**

You can control the display of the background colored area relative to paragraph contents (the distance between limits of paragraph contents and limits of colored area). Larger positive values increase the hanging. Negative values force the color to be inside of paragraph contents.

**5.17.9.21 Replace Text...**

Click on the **Search** menu and choose **Relace Text...** (hot-key: **Ctrl+G**)

**Search Where**

**Entire entry** - the current entry is searched, starting from the beginning of the entry.

**All entries in <category>, starting here** - Search the current entry, then search all following entries in the category.

**All entries in <category>** - Search all entries in the category.

**Text to Find**

Enter the word or phrase you want to search for here.

**Replace With**

Enter the word or phrase that the found text will be replaced with.

**Options**

**Case-sensitive** - the case (uppercase or lowercase) of the text to find must match exactly.

**Whole words only** - no partial-word matches.

**Prompt on replace** - you will be prompted before each replacement so you can choose whether this text should be replaced.

#### 5.17.9.22 Reset Login Password

Lost passwords cannot be recovered. But they *can* be reset.

When you are prompted for your password for your login name or category, type:

**//resetpassword**

That will bring up this form.

NOTE: Users who have activated [Extended Security](#) cannot have their passwords reset. That's one of the features of Extended Security.

#### Password Reset Code

Enter the password reset code you received here.

#### Request Reset Code

Clicking here will start your email program to request a password reset code from DavidRM Software.

[Email DavidRM Software and request a password reset code.](#)

#### 5.17.9.23 Select Entry

This form is used by [Insert/Edit Link](#) to select the entry to link to.

Select the entry you want from the list of active categories and their entries.

#### 5.17.9.24 Stopwatch Timer

Click on the **View** menu and choose "**Timer**" (hot-key: **Ctrl+Alt+I**), then click on "**Stopwatch**".

The Journal's stopwatch timer can be used to track how long you have been working on a particular project.

NOTE: When you use the stopwatch, the [countdown timer](#) is disabled. And vice versa. You cannot use both the stopwatch and the countdown timer at the same time.

#### Time Elapsed

Time Elapsed displays the time since you started the stopwatch, in hours, minutes, and seconds (hh:mm:ss).

While the stopwatch is running, you can insert the current elapsed time into your entry by clicking on the **Insert** menu and choosing "**Insert Timer Count**".



Will start the stopwatch. If you have paused the timer, it will resume from its last count.

**Pause**

Will pause the stopwatch.

**Reset**

Reset stops the stopwatch, resetting it to the starting time (00:00:00).

**5.17.9.25 Unlock Form**

When The Journal is "locked", either by minimizing or by using the **"Hide Journal"** hot-key (**Ctrl+J**), you must enter your password to regain access.

**5.17.9.26 User Images**

Click on the **User** menu and choose **"User Images..."**

The Journal allows you to load images for use as backgrounds to document entries or as [Calendar Charms](#).

**Images**

This is the list of all images currently loaded by the user. Each user login in The Journal has its own list of images.

**Load Image...**

Click this button to load a new image.

NOTE: Every image must have a unique file name.

**Delete Image**

Delete the currently selected image.

**Description**

You can add a description to the image. This description is shown, along with the filename, whenever you need to choose a background image for an entry or a Calendar Charm collection.

**Image Type**

An image is either a background image or a Calendar Charm collection.

**Background Image Options****Position**

A background image can be either tiled across the entry, centered in the middle of the entry, or stretched to fit the entry editor.

### Margin Offsets

Click on this button to adjust the margins used with background image, for example to prevent text from displaying on the border of the image.

### Calendar Charm Options

Calendar Charm images are often collections of same-sized images arranged in a grid (but without visible grid lines).

#### # of Charms Across (X)

The number of charm images across the image.

#### # of Charms Down (Y)

The number of charm images down the image.

### 5.17.9.27 User Statistics

Click on the **User** menu and choose "**User Statistics...**"

NOTE: If you have a lot of categories and/or a lot of entries, it may take a few seconds for the totals to be tallied.

This form shows the following information for the current user:

- **# of Categories (Active)** - how many active categories this user has (includes active sub-categories)
- **# of Categories (Total)** - the total number of categories this user has, active or inactive
- **# of Entries (Active)** - the number of entries in all active categories
- **# of Entries (Total)** - the number of entries in all categories, active or inactive

### 5.17.9.28 Word Count

Click on the **Tools** menu and choose "**Word Count...**" (hot-key: **Ctrl+W**).

This form displays the following statistics for the entry or the selected text:

- **Words** - how many words are in the entry or selected text
- **Characters (no spaces)** - how many non-whitespace characters there are
- **Characters (with spaces)** - how many total characters are in the entry or selected text
- **Paragraphs** - the number of individual paragraphs (empty paragraphs are not counted)
- **Lines** - the number lines displayed (this number varies as you resize The Journal)

## 5.18 User Preferences

Each user of The Journal can customize The Journal to fit her own tastes and preferences.

[General](#)  
[Global](#)  
[Category](#)  
[Entry](#)  
[Editor](#)



[Topics](#)  
[Reminders](#)  
[Date/Time](#)  
[Links](#)  
[Spell Checker](#)  
[Printing](#)  
[Backup/Restore](#)  
[Security](#)

### 5.18.1 User Preferences: General

#### Measurement System

The Journal supports either the US system (inches, etc.) or the Metric system (centimeters, etc.). The Journal automatically uses the measurement system settings active in Windows. If you wish to change it, use this option.

#### Display Start of Week on

Your calendar can be set to start on any day of the week. Your Tasks, Events, Appointments etc will also use this day of the first day of the week. NOTE: You can override this at the category level.

#### Display Week Numbers on Calendar

If checked, the week number is displayed on the small calendar.

NOTE: If the start-of-week is set to Monday, the week number is calculated according to ISO 8601.

#### Highlight dates with entries on calendar

If checked, dates with one or more entry are highlighted on the small calendar.

#### Start New Entry Date After

This is the time after which The Journal considers a new entry date to have begun in daily entry calendar categories. The default is midnight (12:00 am or 00:00).

#### Create New Entry always prompts for date (calendar categories only)

When checked, the Create New Entry command (hot-key: F9) always prompts for the date to be used for the new entry.

This option only applies to calendar categories like "Daily Journal".

#### Create New Entry defaults to today's date (calendar categories only)

When checked, the Create New Entry command (hot-key: F9) uses today's entry date by default. If not checked, the date of the currently active entry is used instead.

This option only applies to calendar categories like "Daily Journal".

### **Edit Custom Colors**

Use this option to set up to 16 custom colors that will be available wherever The Journal allows a color to be set or selected.

## **5.18.2 User Preferences: Global**

These options affect all users in all Journal Volumes on this computer.

### **Auto-Save Every *nn* Minutes**

When checked and the number of minutes is selected, this option specifies when The Journal will automatically save all changes.

### **Auto-Minimize if idle for *nn* Minutes**

When checked and the number of minutes is selected, this option specifies when The Journal will automatically minimize if it has received no input from the user.

## **Display/UI**

### **Show "splash screen" on Startup**

Un-check this option if you do not wish to see The Journal's opening screen when starting The Journal.

### **Show icon in the Windows system tray**

If this option is checked, The Journal will minimize to the Windows "system tray" (in the lower-left corner, by the time display) instead of the taskbar. When The Journal is not minimized, The Journal will still have a button on the Windows taskbar.

### **Minimize on Close**

If this option is checked, The Journal will not close when you click on the "X" (Close Window) button in the upper right corner of The Journal window. Instead, The Journal will minimize.

To force The Journal to close, click on the Journal menu and choose "Exit The Journal".

### **Minimize when The Journal loses focus**

If this option is checked, any window that is placed in front of The Journal will prompt The Journal to minimize.

### Disable Ctrl+Alt Hot-keys

If checked, this option turns off the keyboard shortcuts in The Journal that use Ctrl+Alt key combinations. Currently, this only affects the Toggle Calendar (Ctrl+Alt+C), Toggle Tree (Ctrl+Alt+T), and Toggle Timer (Ctrl+Alt+I) hot-keys.

### International character hot-keys override topic hot-keys

If checked (the default), then the international hot-keys for circumflex accented characters (^ over the letter) and combined characters (like the German double S, ß) are active.

If un-checked, topic Ctrl+Shift+6 and Ctrl+Shift+7 are available as [topic hot-keys](#).

### When The Journal is inactive, mouse-click only activates

If checked (the default), when The Journal is visible but inactive (for example, behind another program), clicking on The Journal \*only\* activates it. That is, brings The Journal to the top.

If un-checked, when The Journal is brought to the top, the user interface element under the mouse is also clicked.

### The Journal Hide/Unhide Global Windows Hot-Key Active

If this option is checked, The Journal can be activated (as long as it is running) regardless of where you are in Windows, and what other applications may be running.

To set the global hot-key for The Journal, click on the hot-key entry. Then hold down the keys you want to use for the hot-key.

The Journal's default hot-key is: **Ctrl+Alt+J**

If you change the hot-key, you will want to test to make sure that none of your other Windows applications are using the same one.

### Show Journal Volume tabs

If checked, open Journal Volumes will have tabs down the left side of The Journal's window. You can use these tabs to quickly switch between Journal Volumes.

Note: This is a global option and affects all users.

### Show User Name tabs

If checked, all users you have opened in the Journal Volume will have tabs with their name along the bottom edge of The Journal's window. You can use these tabs to quickly switch between open users.

Note: This is a global option and affects all users.

## Theme

### Active Theme

This option sets the active visual theme for the user interface. To see the list of themes with a preview, click on the "Preview" button.

NOTE: If you want to turn off visual themes, select the "Windows" theme.

### Theme applies to form borders

Un-check this option to allow Windows to control the display of form borders and title bars.

### Show category/entry UI element borders

If checked, borders will be drawn around the user interface elements of the main entry editor interface.

### Edit User Interface Font

Use this option to control the font, font type (regular, italic, bold, bold italic) and font size used in all areas of The Journal's main user interface. For example, if you want to use a larger font size, to make the tabs and tree easier to read, you can do that here.

## Sound

### Countdown Timer Completed Sound

This is the sound played when the countdown timer reaches 00:00:00. This can be any sound (.WAV) file on your computer.

#### 5.18.3 User Preferences: Category

### Default Category

The default category is the category opened when starting The Journal. If no default category is set, the first active category is opened.

### Category Layout

#### Display Categories in a Tree

If checked, your categories are displayed in a tree. You can position the tree to the left of the entry editor, or above it.

#### Embed category tree in entry user interface

If checked, the category tree is "embedded" into the entry user interface, just above the calendar and entry tree. This allows the category tree to take up as little space as possible.

#### Categories are Tabs (classic layout)

If checked, your categories each have a separate tab, either on the right of the entry editor, or above it.

#### **Show category type on tab**

If checked, an icon displaying the type of category (calendar, loose-leaf, or folder) is displayed on the category tab, as well as the name of the category.

### **Category Options**

#### **Default Category Type**

Determines which type of category (calendar or loose-leaf) is automatically checked when you "Create New Category..."

The options are:

- Calendar (like "Daily Journal")
- Loose-leaf (like "Notebook")

#### **Keep all active calendar categories on the same date**

If checked, this option keeps all calendar categories on the same entry date. That is, if the date is changed in the current calendar category, the same date is set for all other active calendar categories.

#### **Prompt for entry name when creating new loose-leaf entries**

If checked (the default), when you do a Create New Entry (hot-key: F9) or Create New Sub-Entry (hot-key: F10) to create a new loose-leaf entry, you will be prompted for the name of the entry.

#### **Show entry date/name above entry editor**

If checked, the date or title of the entry will be shown above the entry editor.

If you are using a lower-resolution setting and need more screen "real estate", un-check this option.

#### **Show category colors on tab and in tree**

If checked, category tabs are color coded. Categories are automatically assigned default tab and text colors. You can set each category to have a unique color in [Category Properties](#).

NOTE: If you are using The Journal 6-style skinning, the category tabs will not be color coded.

### **5.18.4 User Preferences: Entry**

#### **Entry Background Color**

This is the color used as the background for all entries. This setting can be overridden at both the category level (see [Category Options: Entry Text Style](#)) and at the entry level.

#### **Entry Background Image**

This is the image that is used as the background for all entries. This setting can be overridden at both the category level (see [Category Options: Entry Text Style](#)) and at the entry level. Images must be loaded using the [User Images](#) form (on the User menu).

NOTE: Entry Background Image overrides Entry Background Color

## Entry Font & Paragraph Settings

This is the font and paragraph formatting that will be used for all entries. This setting can be overridden at both the category level (see [Category Options: Entry Text Style](#)) and at the entry level.

### 5.18.5 User Preferences: Editor

[Editor Options](#) [Image Options](#) [Misc Options](#)

## Editor Options

### Default Tab Width

The default tab width is either 0.50 inches (US) or 1 cm (Metric). If you want it to be some other value, you can specify that here.

### When selecting, auto-select entire word

When using the mouse to select text in an entry, this option causes the selection to always pick up full words.

### Auto-Replace while Typing

If active, this option causes specified sequences to be replaced by text. The replacement text can be either formatted or unformatted.

### Edit Auto-Replace Strings

This button brings up the Edit Auto-Replace Strings form so you can edit, add, or delete auto-replace strings.

### Auto Symbol Replace while Typing

If active, this option causes specified sequences to be replaced by a symbol. For example, '(c)' would be replaced by '©'.

### Edit Symbol Replace Strings

This brings up the [Edit Symbol Replace Strings](#) form where you can edit, add, or delete symbol replacement strings.

Symbol replacements are designated by:

- string to replace (Example: :-) )
- font to pull the symbol from (Example: WingDings)
- symbol to replace with (Example: J)

### Auto-Correction

**Replace i with I** - When checked, all instances of a singularly typed 'i' will be replaced with 'I'. This option is **On** by default for English-language versions of Windows, and **Off** for non-English-language versions of Windows.

**Capitalize the first word of a sentence** - When checked, the first letter of a word that begins a sentence will be capitalized.

**Typographical Quotes (curly quotes)** - When checked, all double- and single-quote characters are converted to their typographical (curly) equivalents.

## Image Options

### Default Layout for Inserted Images

This setting is used when inserting images. You can change the default to be any of the following:

- bottom to base line of text (default)
- middle to base line of text
- top to line top
- bottom to line bottom
- middle to line middle
- left side
- right side

### Insert large images as thumbnails

If true, images with a width or height larger than the specified number of pixels are displayed scaled to that size.

NOTE: The scaling is display only. The image is not resampled. The image can be viewed at smaller or larger sizes by clicking on a corner and dragging.

### Automatic Image Resizing

For most journaling and scrapbooking purposes, images, especially digital photos, don't need to be stored at their full size. However, having to manually resizing the images before putting them in The Journal can be inconvenient. This feature makes it possible to have your images automatically resized when you insert them.

Resizing can be fully automatic, you can have The Journal prompt you, or you can select to have no image resizing.

The images are resized according to their largest dimension. If the image's width is greater than its height, then the width is used to scale the image. If the height is greater than the wide, then the height is used.

The image is resampled during the resize, so that the quality of the image remains high. The resampling uses the Lanczos resampling algorithm with a 6x6 cell size.

### **Default Image Type**

To improve save/load times of entries with images, The Journal automatically converts inserted and pasted images to either JPEG or PNG formats. The JPEG format allows for the best compression, but at the cost of some information. For most photos, JPEG is the best choice.

The PNG (portable network graphic) format doesn't compress most images as small as JPEG, but PNG has the advantage of losing no pixels and doesn't cause the subtle color shifts sometimes seen in JPEG.

This setting only affects images when they are first inserted or pasted. After that, the images aren't changed, regardless of this setting.

## **Misc Options**

### **When pasting, Rich Text Format has priority over HTML Format**

If checked, when pasting from the clipboard, Rich Text Format (if available) has priority over HTML Format.

### **When pasting as Plain Text, preserve images**

If checked, when using Paste as Plain Text, if the text on the clipboard contains images, those will be pasted, as well as the text.

### **Insert URL when pasting from Web pages**

When you copy and paste text and images from a Web page, the URL is inserted immediately following the pasted text/images.

### **Show special characters in editor (global option)**

When checked, this option causes spaces, paragraph and soft-hyphens to be displayed.

### **Use alternative editor formatting (global option)**

When checked, this option causes the editor to use a slightly slower but sometimes more accurate method of formatting text on screen.

Use this option if you see improper line breaks or other formatting issues.

### **Force Bidirectional Editing (global option)**

This option forces The Journal to use bidirectional editing even when the Windows default is left-to-right.

You will need to close and restart The Journal after changing this setting.



NOTE: Activating this option disables "block justify" formatting display. Block justified text will still print correctly, but it will not be displayed with block justification in the entry editor.

### Scroll Speed in Editor (global option)

This number determines how fast the entry editor scrolls when you spin the mouse wheel. The possible values are 1 (slowest) to 99 (fastest).

NOTE: This setting has no effect on the WYSIWYG editor scroll speed.

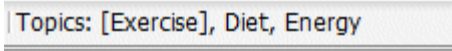
## 5.18.6 User Preferences: Topics

### Default Topic Highlight Color

Topics are displayed with a highlight color that distinguishes them. This is the default highlight color used by all [topics](#). This color can be overridden by each topic, so that special topics get more a distinctive color. This color can also be set to "Transparent", which displays no highlighting in the entry editor.

### Default to "Show all topics" in Editor

If checked (the default), then any text in an entry that has one more topics applied to it will display with that topic's highlight color. If not checked, topic highlight colors aren't displayed. However, the topics in the entry are still listed below the editor:



### Insert Topic Name

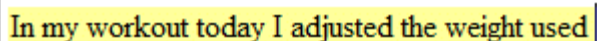
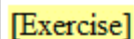
If checked (the default), then the topic name is inserted any time a new topic is selected. How the topic is inserted is controlled by the Topic Name Format option.

NOTE: This option has no effect when you select a block of text and then apply the topic.

### Topic Name Format

The default topic name format is: [%topic]

The "%topic" variable is replaced by the name of the topic.



## Topics

This is the list of all the topics you have defined. The Journal automatically creates nearly 100 topics for you. You can add new topics, delete topics you don't want, and edit topics that need changing.

Topics that you have used in an entry are indicated in **bold** text.

You can make a topic a sub-topic by clicking and dragging it to the topic you want it to be under, then dropping it.

## Topic Name

Every topic, including sub-topics, must have a unique name.

## Highlight

To make it easier to distinguish topics used in an entry, you can set the highlight color. If you do not set a color, then the default topic highlight color is used.

## Hot-Key

Up to 10 topics can be assigned a hot-key. Giving a topic a hot-key makes it even easier to apply that topic. The available hot-keys are Shift+Ctrl+1, Shift+Ctrl+2, up to Shift+Ctrl+0. (NOTE: Shift+Ctrl+6 and Shift+Ctrl+7 are only available if the global option ["International character hot-keys override topic hot-keys"](#) is un-checked.)

## New Sub-Topic

This button creates a new sub-topic of the currently selected topic.

## Delete Topic

Deletes the selected topic.

### 5.18.7 User Preferences: Reminders

[Click here for more information about reminders.](#)

## Report Missed Reminders

If checked (the default), then every time you log in, The Journal will see if you missed any reminders since the last time you logged out.

## Include Reminders When Printing/Exporting Entries

NOTE: This option only applies to entries in calendar categories, like "Daily Journal".

If this option is checked, then when you print or export entries from calendar categories, any reminders that were active, completed, missed, skipped or canceled on that date will also be printed or exported.

### Display reminders/events from MS Outlook in The Journal

If checked, The Journal will display your reminders/events from your default MS Outlook calendar.

### Default Category or Categories for New Reminders

**Active category** - New reminders are created to be visible in the currently active category.

**All categories** - New reminders are created to be visible in all categories.

**Selected categories** - When you create new categories, you will need to specify which category or categories the reminder will be visible in.

## 5.18.8 User Preferences: Date/Time

### "Insert Date" Format

This is the format that is used for dates inserted with the Insert | Date (Ctrl+D) command.

Use the following codes for the date format:

- yyyy - 4 digit year (1996)
- yy - 2 digit year (96)
- mmmm - full month name (August)
- mmm - three-letter abbreviation of month (Aug)
- mm - 2 digit month (08)
- m - 1-2 digit month (8)
- dddd - full day name (Friday)
- ddd - three-letter abbreviation of day (Fri)
- dd - 2 digit day (09)
- d - 1-2 digit day (9)

### Edit "Insert Date" Style

The formatting of the inserted date text can be specified with this option.

See [Styles](#) for more information.

### Entry Date Header Format

This format is used to display the date above calendar entries.

See "Insert Date" Format above for formatting codes. Commas or any punctuation, or spaces can be added or deleted to suit the format of date you would like to display

### Force month and day names to English (global option)

When this option is checked names of months and days will be converted to English. This applies to the calendars and planners as well as the Insert Date and Insert Time commands.

Note: This is a global option and affects all users.

### **"Insert Time" Format**

This is the format that is used for dates inserted with the Insert | Time (Ctrl+T) command.

Use the following codes for the time format:

- hh - 2 digit hour (02:00)
- h - 1 digit hour (2:00)
- nn - 2 digit minute (2:03)
- n - 1 digit minute (2:3)
- ampm - 12-hour clock, AM/PM (2:00 PM)
- am/pm - 12-hour clock, am/pm (2:00 pm)
- a/p - 12-hour clock, a/p (2:00 p)

### **Edit "Insert Time" Style**

The formatting of the inserted time text can be specified with this option.

See [Styles](#) for more information.

#### **5.18.9 User Preferences: Links**

##### **Auto-Highlight Links**

If checked, then [Internet links/URLs](#) (web page addresses, email addresses, etc) and [entry links](#) will be highlighted as they are typed in.

##### **Clicking links opens a New Browser**

If checked, a new browser window is opened when Internet links are clicked on. If not checked, then the most recently opened browser window is used. In either case, if no browser window is open, one is opened.

##### **Edit Internet/Email Links Style**

The formatting used to display Internet links/URLs can be specified with this option.

See [Styles](#) for more information.

##### **Edit Entry Link Style**

The formatting used to display entry links can be specified with this option.

See [Styles](#) for more information.

#### **5.18.10 User Preferences: Spell Checker**

##### **Check spelling as you type**

This option performs "live" spell checking if activated. Misspelled words will be marked with a distinctive underline (see Spelling errors underline color below). Marked words can be right-clicked on to bring up a list of suggestions to correct the misspelling.

### **Spelling errors underline color**

This option specifies the color used when marking misspelled words when performing "live" spell checking.

### **Correct spelling errors as you type**

This option performs "auto-correction" of designated misspellings. For example, "teh" is automatically corrected to "the".

The Journal includes a list of commonly misspelled words and their automatic corrections. Plus, you can add new auto-corrected words to your custom spell check dictionary.

## **5.18.11 User Preferences: Printing**

### **User Name**

This option defaults to your login name for The Journal. If you would like your full name to appear on entry printouts (using the <USERNAME/> macro), enter that here.

### **Edit Default Page Setup**

The default page setup is used when printing entries from any category that does not specify its own page setup. You can specify the default page orientation (portrait or landscape), as well as the margins to be used.

### **Edit Default Page Header and Footer**

The header and footer specified here are used when printing any category that does not specify its own header and footer.

### **Edit Default Entry Header**

The entry header specified here is used when printing entries from a category that does not specify its own entry header.

See [Printing](#) for more information.

## **5.18.12 User Preferences: Backup/Restore**

### **Backup Path**

This is the folder or drive path where the backup will be located. You can select your own destination to removable media or any folder on your hard drive by selecting Browse (...)

### **Always backup when closing The Journal**

When checked, The Journal will do a backup whenever you close the software.

This option overrides the "Prompt for backup every nn days" option.

### **Backup Journal Volumes every nn day(s)**

When this option is checked and the number of days is selected, The Journal will backup your Journal Volumes before closing. The default is every 3 days.

### **Append date & time to backup archive**

If checked, the backup file name will be automatically appended with the current date and time.

### **Keep only the nn most recent backups per Journal Volume**

Once the number of backups for a Journal Volume reaches this number, then the oldest backup is deleted to make room for the new one.

This applies to the backup path you set above, and to all paths you have The Journal copy your backups to (but not to FTP servers).

### **Copy backup archive to these locations**

This feature allows you to automatically create identical backup copies in additional locations by selecting Browse (...), selecting a location, and then clicking **"Add"**.

You can also have The Journal automatically FTP your backup file to an offsite location. To do that, you have to input the FTP information in this format:

**ftp://userLogin:userPassword@ftp.host.com/remote/path/**

Or, if you use anonymous login to the FTP server (not recommended):

**ftp://ftp.host.com/remote/path/**

Finally, it's also possible to upload with FTPS, assuming your server supports FTPS:

**ftps://userLogin:userPassword@ftp.host.com/remote/path/**

## **5.18.13 User Preferences: Security**

### **Automatically log in this user (bypass password)**

If you would like to automatically log you in when you launch The Journal, set this option. You can also set (or clear) this option by clicking on the **User** menu and choosing **Auto-Login**.

**You must confirm your password to activate this option.** If you have a blank password, just hit ENTER.

NOTE: This feature effectively bypasses The Journal's built-in security features, so only activate this feature if you are the only person using your computer.

In past versions of The Journal, Auto-Login was called "Single User Mode".

## **Lock User on Minimize/Hide (prompt for password on restore/un-hide)**

This setting, if active, "locks" The Journal when minimized or it is hidden, whether with the auto-hide option or the "Hide The Journal" hot-key (Ctrl+J).

See [Extended Security: Global Options](#) for more information.

**- " -**

"Insert Date" Format 195

"Insert Time" Format 195

**- [ -**

[GlobalOption] 171

**- 7 -**

750words.com, import from 107

**- A -**

accented characters, hot-keys 168

add-on packages 80

anniversary reminder 129

anniversary, display year 129

Append date & time to backup archive 197

Apply Topic 164

Appointments/Dates 127

Arrange Category Tabs on the Right 185

ATOM Publishing Format 103

ATOM, importing entries from 59

ATOM, importing from 104

audio files 110

audio files, inserting 117

Auto Symbol Replace while Typing 190

auto-correction, auto-capitalize 190

auto-correction, replace i with I 190

Auto-Hide if Idle 198

Auto-Highlight Links 196

Auto-load when The Journal starts 118

auto-login 69

Automatic Image Resizing 190

Automatically log in this user (bypass password) 198

Auto-Minimize if idle for nn Minutes 186

Auto-Paste to Active Entry 175

Auto-Replace while Typing 190

Auto-Save Every nn Minutes 186

**- B -**

background image, setting the 112

background images, creating your own 114

background images, loading 114, 183

Backup Archive 90

Backup Contents 90

Backup Settings 90, 197

Backup/Restore 89

Batch Entry Import 107

Batch Export/Batch Import 106

batch import 106

Batch Importing 104

Benefits of Buying The Journal 16

bidirectional editing, force 190

birthday reminder 129

birthday, display year 129

blog 69

Blog Alias 74

Blog API 74

Blog Export Settings 74

Blog Profile 74

Blog Proxy Settings 74

Blog Support 72

Blog Tool 74

blog, Blogger 72

blog, MovableType 72

blog, TypePad 72

blog, WordPress 72

Blogger (Google) setup 76

Blogs Supported 72

bookmark 69

bookmark, go to 122

bookmark, insert 122

bookmark, remove 122

Bookmarks 122

border images, loading 113

Buy The Journal 16

**- C -**

Calendar Categories 77

Calendar Category Options 83

calendar charm, inserting 115

calendar charm, removing an entry's 115

calendar charm, setting or changing an entry's 115

Calendar Charms 69, 115, 173

Calendar Charms, creating your own 116

Calendar Charms, loading 116

Calendar Charms, user-created 183

Calendar Views 78



- calendar, month 78
  - calendar, year 78
  - Can I insert digital photos in my entries? 51
  - Can I use voice-recognition software with The Journal? 57
  - Categories 55, 69, 77
  - categories, calendar 77
  - categories, linked 79
  - categories, loose-leaf 79
  - categories, merging 80
  - categories, notebook 79
  - categories, options 81
  - categories, options for calendar 83
  - categories, shared 79
  - Category Active 82
  - Category Entries are Read Only (and no new entries) 88
  - Category is a Folder Only 82
  - Category is Shared 88
  - Category Name 82
  - Category Password 88
  - Category Properties 81
  - Category Properties: Calendar 83
  - Category Properties: Entry 85
  - Category Properties: Entry Text Style 87
  - Category Properties: General 82
  - Category Properties: Security 88
  - Category Properties: Sharing 88
  - Category Share Password 88
  - Category sort order 82
  - Category Statistics 173
  - Category Tab Visible 82
  - category tabs, move to top 55
  - category tabs, put on top 55
  - category, calendar, what is a 55
  - category, creating a new 55
  - category, default type 188
  - category, deleting 55
  - category, how to create a new 44
  - category, loose-leaf, what is a 55
  - category, merging 80
  - cedilla, hot-key 168
  - centimeters 185
  - Change User Password 173
  - changing password 62
  - Character: Font 141
  - Character: Highlight Color 141
  - characters, typing international 166
  - Check spelling as you type 196
  - Choose Category to Import Into 174
  - choose date 179
  - Choosing a Good Password 137
  - Clean Journal Volume folder 91
  - Clipboard Viewer 175
  - Command Line Options 172
  - Compress Entries 198
  - Contact Information 11
  - Convert Doodle to Image 111
  - Copy backup archive to these locations 197
  - copy backup to ftp 197
  - Correct spelling errors as you type 196
  - count words in an entry 184
  - count words in selection 184
  - Countdown Timer 175
  - Countdown Timer Completed Sound 186
  - Create a New Entry Every ... 83
  - Creating a New Category 44
  - Creating Additional Journal Volumes 47
  - Creating Additional Logins 46
  - Creating Enhanced Templates 154
  - Creating Entries 39
  - Creating New Styles 140
  - Creating Simple Templates 153
  - Creating Your Own Backgrounds 114
  - Creating Your Own Borders 113
  - Creating Your Own Calendar Charms 116
  - Credits 13
  - Ctrl+Alt hot-keys, disable 186
  - Ctrl+Alt key combinations, disable 171
  - Cumberland Diary, import from 107
  - Custom Colors 185
  - customize menus 166
  - customize toolbars 166
  - Customizing the User Interface Font 165
  - Customizing the User Interface with Skins 165
- ## - D -
- daily entry categories 77
  - Daily Journal 39
  - Daily/Weekly Entry Report 98
  - Daily/Weekly Reminder Report 98, 133
  - Database Maintenance 48, 89
  - Day Planner 69, 132
  - DayNotez CSV file import 107
  - Dedication 14

- Default Category Type 188
- Default Editor Background Image 190
- Default Entry Template 85
- default entry template, setting 147
- Default Footer 125
- Default Header 125
- Default Image Type 190
- Default Page Setup, Page Header, Page Footer, and Entry Header 85
- default path 118
- Default Tab Width 190
- Default to "Show All Topics" in Editor 193
- Default Topic Highlight Color 193
- Delete Entries 100
- Delete Users 118, 176
- deleted entries, recovering 100
- Deleting a User 118
- Diario import 107
- Diario, importing entries from 59
- dictionary, custom, spell checker 196
- dictionary, spell checker 196
- digital photos 110
- digital photos, inserting 51, 111
- Disable Ctrl+Alt Hot-keys 186
- Display actual date/time entry created 83
- Display calendar folders for ... 83
- Display first line of entry in entry tree 83
- Display reminders/events from MS Outlook in The Journal 194
- Display Start of Week on 185
- Display week numbers on calendar 185
- Document Entries 91
- Document Entry Options 85
- document, export entries as 101
- documents, importing 104
- doodle, convert to image 111
- Doodling in Entries 111

## - E -

- Edit "Insert Date" Style 195
- Edit "Insert Time" Style 195
- Edit Auto Replace Strings 176, 190
- Edit Custom Colors 185
- Edit Default Header and Footer 197
- Edit Default Page Setup 197
- Edit Entry Link Style 196
- Edit Font and Text Settings 87
- Edit Header/Footer 176
- Edit Internet/Email Links Style 196
- Edit Page Setup, Header, Footer 85
- Edit Styles 140
- Edit Symbol Replace Strings 177, 190
- Editing Categories 44
- Editing Keyboard Shortcuts 166
- Editing Standard Styles 140
- Editing Topics 164
- EfficientPIM, import from 107
- Encrypt Entries 198
- encryption algorithm 137
- Enhanced Template Basics 154
- Enhanced Template Script Variables 153
- Enhanced Template Scripting 157
- Enhanced Template Scripting Part 2 160
- Enhanced Template Sections 156
- Enhanced Template Tags 149
- Enhanced Templates 148
- Enhanced Templates Wrapup 161
- enhanced templates, basics 154
- Enter Registration Keys 177
- Entries 51, 69, 91
- entries, document 91
- entries, external object 92
- entries, image 92
- entries, locking 51
- entries, maximum 51
- entries, searching 94
- entries, text 91
- Entry Background Color 87
- Entry Background Image 87
- Entry Background Images 112
- Entry Changes Log 178
- Entry Date Header Format 195
- entry history 180
- Entry Index 98
- Entry Links 119
- Entry Links to Calendar Entries 120
- Entry Links to Loose-leaf Entries 120
- entry links, typing 120
- entry links, with bookmarks 122
- Entry Report Results 99
- Entry Report Wizard 98
- Entry Statistics 178
- entry time stamp, remove 51
- entry tree 69
- Entry Type 85

- Event Reminders 128
- Events 128
- EverNote enex import 107
- EverNote, importing entries from 59
- EverNote, importing from 104
- Exclude from automatic backups 118
- Export Entries as Document 101
- Export Entries as File 103
- export files, importing 104
- export formats 101
- Export/Import 101
- Export/Import CSV Format (for reminders) 134
- Exporting 101, 103
- exporting entries 93
- exporting HTML 101
- Exporting Reminders 133
- exporting rich text (RTF) 101
- exporting text 101
- Extended Security 62, 138
- Extended Security: Global Options 138
- external entry link 122
- external hard drive, install The Journal to a 58
- External Object Entries 92
- External Object Entry 85

## - F -

- FAQ 50
- FAQ: Backup/Restore 60
- FAQ: Categories 55
- FAQ: Database Maintenance 60
- FAQ: Entries 51
- FAQ: Export/Import 59
- FAQ: Journal Volumes 58
- FAQ: Printing 54
- FAQ: Security 62
- FAQ: Upgrading 63
- FAQ: User Interface 57
- File Links 123
- Find Text 179
- Flash drive, install The Journal to a 58
- font, category default 87
- font, interface 186
- Force Bidirectional Editing 190
- Force month and day names to English 195
- Frequently Asked Questions 50

## - G -

- german double s, hot-key 168
- Get Web Page 179
- Getting Started 34
- global options 186
- Glossary 69
- Go to Date 179
- GOForceRepair 171
- GOShowSplashScreen 171

## - H -

- Handle Dropped File 179
- history of entries opened 180
- hot-key 186
- hot-keys 166
- hot-keys for international characters 168
- hot-keys, Ctrl+Alt, disable 186
- hot-keys, editing 166
- How do I backup The Journal? 60
- How do I create a new category? 55
- how do I create a new user login 46
- How do I customize the toolbars? 57
- How do I delete a category? 55
- How do I get rid of my password? 62
- How do I get rid of the time on my entries? 51
- How do I insert images in my entries? 51
- How do I install The Journal on a USB/Flash Drive? 58
- How do I make my entries read only? 51
- How do I make The Journal 6 look like The Journal 4? 63
- How do I move The Journal to a new computer? 58
- How do I put the category tabs on top (instead of on the right)? 55
- How do I reset my password? 57
- How do I restore from a backup? 60
- How do I restore just one category from a backup file? 60
- How do I see how many entries are in a category? 55
- How do I set a category's default font? 55
- How do I set the printer margins? 54
- How do I set/change my password? 62
- How do I synchronize 2 Journal Volumes? 58
- How do I use The Journal on a Network? 58
- How do I use topics in my entries? 51
- How do I wrap text around pictures in my entries? 51

How many entries can The Journal hold? 51  
 How to Buy the Journal via "Snail" Mail 16  
 How to Buy the Journal via the World Wide Web 16  
 how to create a new category 44  
 how to create a new Journal Volume 47  
 how to link to an entry 119  
 HTML, export entries 101

## - I -

Ignore words... 196  
 Image Descriptions 111  
 Image Entries 92  
 Image Entry 85  
 image, doodle on 111  
 Images 110  
 images, inserting 51, 111  
 images, resizing 111  
 images, searching 111  
 import entries from another program 59  
 import, batch entry 107  
 import, DayNotez csv file 107  
 import, Diaro xml file 107  
 import, EverNote (.enex) 105  
 import, EverNote export 107  
 import, Lotus Organizer csv file 107  
 import, Penzu (.xml) 105  
 import, WordPress export 107  
 import, XML 105  
 Importing 104  
 Importing Entries from Other Journal Software 106  
 importing HTML files 104  
 Importing Reminders 134  
 importing rich text files 104  
 importing text files 104  
 inches 185  
 Include Reminders When Printing/Exporting Entries 194  
 InfoSelect v8/v9 107  
 INI settings 171  
 insert audio 117  
 insert bookmark 122  
 Insert Doodle 111  
 Insert Media 117  
 Insert Table 144  
 Insert Topic Name 193  
 Insert URL when pasting from Web pages 190  
 insert video 117

Insert/Edit Link 123  
 Inserting Images 51, 111  
 inserting links 123  
 Inserting Media Files into Entries 117  
 Inserting Objects into Entries 117  
 inserting photos 51  
 international character hot-keys 168  
 International character hot-keys override topic hot-keys 186  
 International Characters 166  
 Internet Links 123

## - J -

Journal Volume 69  
 Journal Volume is Read Only 118  
 Journal Volume Properties 118  
 journal volume, default path 118  
 Journal Volume, how to create a new 47  
 Journal Volume, what is a 58  
 Journal Volumes 118  
 Journal.INI 171

## - K -

Keep All Active Standard Categories on the Same Date 185  
 Keep only the nn most recent backups per Journal Volume 197  
 Keep The Journal "on top" 186  
 Keyboard Shortcuts 166  
 Keyboard Shortcuts (Hot-Keys) Alphabetically 168  
 keyboard shortcuts, editing 166

## - L -

Language 171  
 Levels of Security 136  
 license 12  
 link, entry, external 122  
 linked categories 79  
 linking to an entry, how to 119  
 Links 69, 119  
 links to files 123  
 links, email 123  
 links, entry 119  
 links, file 123

- links, internet 123
- links, Web page 123
- links, with bookmarks 122
- Loading Your Background Image 114
- Loading Your Border Image 113
- Loading Your Calendar Charms 116
- Lock Entries on Edit 88
- lock entry 100
- Lock on Minimize/Hide 198
- Login 180
- Loose-leaf Categories 79
- lost password, resetting a 57
- Lotus Organizer csv file import 107

## - M -

- Make The Journal 6 look like The Journal 4 63
- Mark past entries read-only 83
- Master Category 82
- Measurement System 185
- measurement, metric 185
- measurement, US 185
- media 69
- media files 110
- media files, inserting 117
- media files, playing 117
- menus, customizing 166
- merge two or more categories 80
- Merging Categories 80
- metric 185
- Minimize on Close 186
- Minimize when The Journal loses focus 186
- Missed Reminders 135
- MS Outlook reminders 194

## - N -

- network, how do I use The Journal on a 58
- new computer, moving The Journal to a 58
- new features in The Journal 6 30
- New/Updated Entry Report 98
- No new users can be created in Journal Volume 118
- Normal Document Entry 85
- Notebook 39
- notebook categories 79

## - O -

- objects, inserting 117
- only one instance of The Journal 171
- Only show if there are active reminders 82
- Only Verify Password Once per Session 88
- options, backup 197
- options, date/time 195
- options, editor 190
- options, entry link 196
- options, general 185
- options, global 186
- options, internet/URL links 196
- options, link 196
- options, printing 197
- options, reminder 194
- options, security 198
- options, spell checker 196
- options, topic 193
- Orange Diary Pro, import from 107
- order form 18

## - P -

- Packages 80
- packages, add-on 80
- paragraph borders 180
- Paragraph Borders & Shading 180
- paragraph color 180
- paragraph shading 180
- Paragraph: Alignment & Indents: Alignment 141
- Paragraph: Alignment & Indents: Apply Style to Indentation 141
- Paragraph: Alignment & Indents: Left and Right 141
- Paragraph: Alignment & Indents: Special 141
- Paragraph: Apply Style to Paragraph Settings 141
- Paragraph: Numbering/Bullets: Apply Style 141
- Paragraph: Numbering/Bullets: Bullet/Numbering Type 141
- Paragraph: Numbering/Bullets: Indent 141
- Paragraph: Numbering/Bullets: Numbering Style 141
- Paragraph: Spacing: Apply Style to Paragraph Spacing 141
- Paragraph: Spacing: Before and After 141
- Paragraph: Spacing: Line Spacing 141
- password hashing 137
- password, category 88

- password, changing 62
- password, changing your 173
- password, choosing a good 137
- password, how to reset my 57
- password, I don't want a 198
- password, removing 62
- password, resetting a 57
- password, tips for a good 137
- password, user 198
- Penzu, importing entries from 59
- Penzu, importing from 104
- photos 110
- photos, inserting 51, 111
- pictures 110
- pictures, inserting 111
- preferences, backup/restore 197
- preferences, date/time 195
- preferences, editor 190
- preferences, general 185
- preferences, global 186
- preferences, link 196
- preferences, printing 197
- preferences, reminder 194
- preferences, security 198
- preferences, spell checker 196
- preferences, topic 193
- preferences, user 184
- pricing, The Journal 17
- Print Loose-leaf Entry Index Indented 197
- Print Macros 126
- Printing 54, 124
- Printing Entries 40
- Printing Headers and Footers 125
- printing, headers & footers 176
- printing, margins 125
- printing, page setup and margins 125
- product license information 12
- Prompt for backup every nn day(s) 197
- Prompt for backup when closing The Journal 197
- Prompt for entry name when creating new loose-leaf entries 185
- Prompt for Lock Message 88
- Prompt on repeated word 196

## - Q -

- Quantity Pricing 17

## - R -

- read only, make an entry 100
- read only, make category 88
- read only, make Journal Volume 118
- read only, past entries marked as 83
- registration keys, entering 177
- Reminders & Tasks 127
- Reminders to Show Above Entry 194
- reminders, # to show above entry 194
- reminders, advanced options 130
- reminders, anniversary 129
- reminders, appointment 127
- reminders, birthday 129
- reminders, category options 130
- reminders, date 127
- reminders, date/time options 130
- reminders, display options 130
- reminders, event 128
- reminders, export/import format 134
- reminders, exporting 133
- reminders, importing 134
- reminders, missed 135, 194
- reminders, moving to another install of The Journal 133
- reminders, notes 130
- reminders, popup options 130
- reminders, printing/exporting 194
- reminders, reporting 133
- reminders, special day 129
- reminders, status options 130
- reminders, task 129
- reminders, view a list of all 133
- remove bookmark 122
- removing password 62
- Repair All Journal Volumes 90
- Repair Journal Volume 90
- Repair System Database 90
- Repair The Journal Databases 90
- Replace Text... 181
- Report Missed Reminders 194
- report, new/updated entries 98
- report, topics used 98
- reports, types of entry 98
- Reset Login Password 182
- Resizing Images 111
- Restore 90

restore a category from a backup file 60  
 Restore Journal Volume 90  
 Reverting to The Journal 6 64  
 rich text (RTF), export entries as 101

## - S -

Save Entry As... 93  
 Save entry editor state between sessions 85  
 Saving Entries 93  
 script variables, enhanced template 153  
 Scroll Speed in Editor 190  
 search and replace text 181  
 Search Categories 94  
 Search Entries 94  
 Search Results 97  
 Search Text 94  
 Searching Image Descriptions 111  
 Searching Topics 165  
 Security 136  
 Security Details 137  
 Security Overview 136  
 security, extended 138  
 security, levels of 136  
 security, overview of The Journal's 136  
 Select Categories/Entries to Export 101  
 Select Categories/Entries to Print 124  
 Select Entry 182  
 Select Export Format 101  
 Setting the Entry Background Image 112  
 Setting Up a Blogger (Google) Blog 76  
 Setting Up a Custom Blog 76  
 Setting Up a WordPress Blog 75  
 settings, backup 197  
 Shared Categories 79  
 shortcuts, keyboard 166  
 Show calendar 82  
 Show Category Type on Tab 185  
 Show day planner with active reminders 82  
 Show Entry Date/Name above Category Tabs 185  
 Show entry tree 82  
 Show Journal Volume tabs 185  
 Show special characters in editor 190  
 Show The Journal "splash screen" on Startup 186  
 Show The Journal in the Windows system tray 186  
 Show User Name tabs 185  
 Simple Templates 148  
 skin, changing the 165  
 skin, how do I change the 57  
 skinning, turn off 186  
 skinning, turn on 186  
 sound, countdown timer completed 186  
 sound, reminder popup 130  
 special day reminders 129  
 Special Days 129  
 Special Thanks 14  
 spell checker 196  
 Spelling errors underline color 196  
 stamp entries with time 83  
 standard styles, editing 140  
 Start New Entry Date After 185  
 Start on latest entry by default 83  
 Stopwatch 182  
 style 69  
 Style Name 141  
 Style Options 141  
 Styles 139  
 styles, create new 140  
 styles, editing 140  
 styles, standard, editing 140  
 Suggest from main dictionaries only 196  
 supported blogs 72  
 Supported Export Formats 101  
 switch language 171  
 synchronizing The Journal 59  
 Syncing The Journal 108  
 Syncing The Journal from USB to Desktop 108  
 Syncing The Journal from Work to Home 108  
 system database 69

## - T -

tab setting 190  
 Table Cell Properties 147  
 Table FAQ 143  
 Table Properties 145  
 Table Row Properties 146  
 Tables 142  
 tables, inserting 51, 144  
 tables, making tables look like MS Word 51  
 tables, using 143  
 tabs 77  
 tabs, calendar 77  
 tabs, category 77  
 tabs, daily entry 77  
 tabs, loose-leaf 79

- tabs, notebook 79
- tagging an entry with a topic 162
- task reminders 129
- Tasks 129
- template
  - creating a simple 153
- template, inserting a 147
- Templates 147
- Templates Overview 147
- templates, enhanced 148, 154
- templates, enhanced tags 149
- templates, enhanced, basics 154
- templates, inserting 51
- templates, overview of 147
- templates, simple 148
- text, export entries as 101
- The Journal 4 icons, how to use 63
- The Journal 6, going back to 64
- The Journal 6, new features 30
- The Journal 6, reverting to 64
- The Journal Hide/Unhide Global Windows Hot-Key 186
- The Journal Order Form 18
- The Journal Pricing 17
- Theme applies to form borders 186
- theme, changing the 165
- theme, how do I change the 57
- timer, countdown 175
- timer, stopwatch 182
- TJ4 icons for menus and toolbars, how to use 63
- TJ6, going back to 64
- TJ6, reverting to 64
- TJEXP export file format 103
- TJXML export file format 103
- to-do items 135
- to-do items, creating 135
- to-do items, managing 135
- to-do items, report 135
- toolbars, customizing 166
- toolbars, how to customize 57
- topic 69
- Topic Name 193
- Topic Usage Report 98
- topic, options 164
- Topics 161
- topics, applying 162
- topics, editing 164
- topics, searching 165

- topics, using 162
- tree 69
- Turn on Skinning 186
- typing international characters 166
- Typing Out Entry Links 120
- Typing out Links with Tags 124

## - U -

- unlock entry 100
- Unlock Form 183
- Un-upgrading to The Journal 7 64
- Upgrade Pricing 17
- Upgrading Add-on Packages 66
- Upgrading Categories (The Journal 2.x) 67
- Upgrading Entries (The Journal 2.x) 67
- Upgrading from a Backup File 64
- Upgrading from The Journal 2.x 67
- Upgrading from The Journal 3 64
- Upgrading from The Journal 4 64
- Upgrading from The Journal 5 64
- Upgrading Notes 64
- Upgrading Users (The Journal 2.x) 67
- Upgrading Your Journal Volumes from The Journal 6 (or earlier) 64
- URLs 123
- USB drive, install The Journal to a 58
- Use alternative editor formatting 190
- Use Category Extended Security 88
- Use The Journal 4 icons 186
- Use TJ4 icons for the toolbars, menus and entry tree 186
- Use WYSIWYG formatting 85
- User Images 183
- User Interface Font 186
- User Name 197
- User Preferences 184
- User Preferences: Backup/Restore 197
- User Preferences: Date/Time 195
- User Preferences: Edit 190
- User Preferences: General 185
- User Preferences: Global 186
- User Preferences: Links 196
- User Preferences: Printing 197
- User Preferences: Reminders 194
- User Preferences: Security 198
- User Preferences: Spell Checker 196
- User Preferences: Topics 193



User Statistics 184  
users, changing passwords 173  
users, deleting 118  
Using a Blog 73  
Using Categories 44  
Using Images in Entries 111  
Using Tables 143  
Using Topics 162

## - X -

XML, export to 103

## - V -

Version History 18  
video files 110  
video files, inserting 117  
View | Change Skin/Theme 165  
View All Reminders 133  
view deleted entries 100  
voice-recognition software, using The Journal with 57  
volume 118  
volume, journal 118

## - W -

Web pages 123  
week numbers, displaying 185  
week, first day of 185  
Welcome to The Journal 9  
What are the size limits on a Journal Volume? 58  
What is a Journal Volume? 58  
What is Extended Security? 62  
What kind of encryption does The Journal use? 62  
What's New in The Journal 6 30  
When pasting as Plain Text, preserve images 190  
When pasting, Rich Text Format has priority over HTML Format 190  
when selecting, auto-select entire word 190  
Word Count 178, 184  
word count, on the status bar 85  
word count, running 85  
WordPress blog setup 75  
WordPress xml import 107  
WordPress, importing entries from 59  
wrap text around pictures 51  
WYSIWYG 85